# (19) World Intellectual Property Organization International Bureau



## 

## (43) International Publication Date 20 March 2003 (20.03.2003)

#### PCT

# (10) International Publication Number WO 03/02286 A1

- (51) International Patent Classification<sup>7</sup>: A61K 31/554, C07D 285/36, A61P 3/06, C07D 281/02, C07K 5/065, 5/087, A61K 38/05, 38/06
- (21) International Application Number: PCT/GB02/04033
- (22) International Filing Date:

5 September 2002 (05.09.2002)

(25) Filing Language:

English

(26) Publication Language:

English

(30) Priority Data:

0121768.6 8 September 2001 (08.09.2001) GB 0209463.9 25 April 2002 (25.04.2002) GB

- (71) Applicant (for all designated States except MG, US): AS-TRAZENECA AB [SE/SE]; Sodertalje, S-151 85 (SE).
- (71) Applicant (for MG only): ASTRAZENECA UK LIM-ITED [GB/GB]; 15 Stanhope Gate, London, Greater London W1Y 6LN (GB).
- (72) Inventors; and
- (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): STARKE, Ingemar [SE/SE]; Molndal, S-431 83 (SE). DAHLSTROM, Mikael, Ulf, Johan [FI/SE]; Molndal, S-431 83 (SE). BLOMBERG, David [SE/SE]; Molndal, S-431 83 (SE). ALENFALK, Suzanne [SE/SE]; Molndal, S-431 83 (SE).

SKJARET, Tore [NO/SE]; Molndal, S-431 83 (SE). LEMURELL, Malin [SE/SE]; Molndal, S-431 83 (SE).

- (74) Agents: BRYANT, Tracey et al.; Astrazeneca, Global Intellectual Property, Mereside, Alderley Park, Macclesfield, Cheshire SK10 4TG (GB).
- (81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, OM, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.
- (84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, SK, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

#### Published:

- with international search report

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: BENZOTHIAZEPINE AND BENZOTHIADIAZEPINE DERIVATIVES WITH ILEAL BILE ACID TRANSPORT (IBAT) INHIBITORY ACTIVITY FOR THE TREATMENT HYPERLIPIDAEMIA

(57) Abstract: The present invention relates to compounds of formula (I) wherein R<sup>v</sup>, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>x</sup>, R<sup>y</sup>, M, R<sup>z</sup>, v, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, R<sup>5</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are as defined within; pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, solvates of such salts and prodrugs thereof and their use as ileal bile acid transport (IBAT) inhibitors for the treatment of hyperlipidaemia. Processes for their manufacture and pharmaceutical compositions containing them are also described.

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

BENZOTHIAZEPINE AND BENZOTHIADIAZEPINE DERIVATIVES WITH ILEAL BILE ACID TRANSPORT (IBAT) INHIBITORY ACTIVITY FOR THE TREATMENT HYPERLIPIDAEMIA

This invention relates to benzothiazepine and benzothiadiazepine derivatives, or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, solvates of such salts and prodrugs thereof. These benzothiazepines and benzothiadiazepines possess ileal bile acid transport (IBAT) inhibitory activity and accordingly have value in the treatment of disease states associated with hyperlipidaemic conditions and they are useful in methods of treatment of a warm-blooded animal, such as man. The invention also relates to processes for the manufacture of said benzothiazepine and benzothiadiazepine derivatives, to pharmaceutical compositions containing them and to their use in the manufacture of medicaments to inhibit IBAT in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

5

10

15

20

25

30

It is well-known that hyperlipidaemic conditions associated with elevated concentrations of total cholesterol and low-density lipoprotein cholesterol are major risk factors for cardiovascular atherosclerotic disease (for instance "Coronary Heart Disease: Reducing the Risk; a Worldwide View" Assman G., Carmena R. Cullen P. et al; Circulation 1999, 100, 1930-1938 and "Diabetes and Cardiovascular Disease: A Statement for Healthcare Professionals from the American Heart Association" Grundy S, Benjamin I., Burke G., et al; Circulation, 1999, 100, 1134-46). Interfering with the circulation of bile acids within the lumen of the intestinal tracts is found to reduce the level of cholesterol. Previous established therapies to reduce the concentration of cholesterol involve, for instance, treatment with HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors, preferably statins such as simvastatin and fluvastatin, or treatment with bile acid binders, such as resins. Frequently used bile acid binders are for instance cholestyramine and cholestipol. One recently proposed therapy ("Bile Acids and Lipoprotein Metabolism: a Renaissance for Bile Acids in the Post Statin Era" Angelin B, Eriksson M, Rudling M; Current Opinion on Lipidology, 1999, 10, 269-74) involved the treatment with substances with an IBAT inhibitory effect.

Re-absorption of bile acid from the gastro-intestinal tract is a normal physiological process which mainly takes place in the ileum by the IBAT mechanism. Inhibitors of IBAT can be used in the treatment of hypercholesterolaemia (see for instance "Interaction of bile acids and cholesterol with nonsystemic agents having hypocholesterolaemic properties", Biochemica et Biophysica Acta, 1210 (1994) 255- 287). Thus, suitable compounds having such inhibitory IBAT activity are also useful in the treatment of hyperlipidaemic conditions. Substituted compounds possessing such IBAT inhibitory activity have been described, see for

instance hypolipidaemic compounds described in WO 93/16055, WO 94/18183, WO 94/18184, WO 96/05188, WO 96/08484, WO 96/16051, WO 97/33882, WO 98/38182, WO 99/35135, WO 98/40375, WO 99/35153, WO 99/64409, WO 99/64410, WO 00/01687, WO 00/47568, WO 00/61568, WO 01/68906, DE 19825804, WO 00/38725, WO 00/38726, WO 00/38727, WO 00/38728, WO 00/38729, WO 01/68906 and EP 0 864 582.

A further aspect of this invention relates to the use of the compounds of the invention in the treatment of dyslipidemic conditions and disorders such as hyperlipidaemia, hypertrigliceridemia, hyperbetalipoproteinemia (high LDL), hyperprebetalipoproteinemia (high VLDL), hyperchylomicronemia, hypolipoproteinemia, hypercholesterolemia, hyperlipoproteinemia and hypoalphalipoproteinemia (low HDL). In addition, these compounds are expected to be useful for the prevention and treatment of different clinical conditions such as atherosclerosis, arteriosclerosis, arrhythmia, hyper-thrombotic conditions, vascular dysfunction, endothelial dysfunction, heart failure, coronary heart diseases, cardiovascular diseases, myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, peripheral vascular diseases, inflammation of cardiovascular tissues such as heart, valves, vasculature, arteries and veins, aneurisms, stenosis, restenosis, vascular plaques, vascular fatty streaks, leukocytes, monocytes and/or macrophage infiltration, intimal thickening, medial thinning, infectious and surgical trauma and vascular thrombosis, stroke and transient ischaemic attacks.

The present invention is based on the discovery that certain benzothiazepine and benzothiadiazepine compounds surprisingly inhibit IBAT. Such properties are expected to be of value in the treatment of disease states associated with hyperlipidaemic conditions.

Accordingly, the present invention provides a compound of formula (I):

25 wherein:

5

10

15

20

R<sup>v</sup> is selected from hydrogen or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl;

5

15

One of  $\mathbb{R}^1$  and  $\mathbb{R}^2$  are selected from hydrogen,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl and the other is selected from  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl;

 $\mathbf{R}^{\mathbf{x}}$  and  $\mathbf{R}^{\mathbf{y}}$  are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, amino, mercapto,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl)amino,  $N_1N_2$  ( $C_{1-6}$  alkyl) $C_{1-6}$  alkyl)amino,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl) $C_{1-6}$  alkyl

M is selected from -N- or -CH-;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl,

10 N,N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkoxycarbonyl, N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)sulphamoyl and N,N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl;

v is 0-5;

one of  $\mathbb{R}^4$  and  $\mathbb{R}^5$  is a group of formula (IA):

$$R^{11} \xrightarrow[R^{10} R^9]{}_{R^8} \xrightarrow[R^7]{}_{R^7} X^{-}$$

(IA)

R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> and the other of R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl,

20 N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxycarbonyl,
N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)sulphamoyl and N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl; wherein R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> and the other of R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> may be optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>16</sup>;

X is -O-, -N(R<sup>a</sup>)-, -S(O)<sub>b</sub>- or -CH(R<sup>a</sup>)-; wherein R<sup>a</sup> is hydrogen or  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl and b is 0-2;

25 Ring A is aryl or heteroaryl; wherein Ring A is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from R<sup>17</sup>;

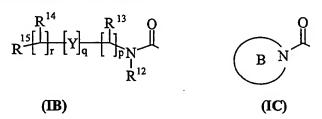
 $R^7$  is hydrogen,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; wherein  $R^7$  is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from  $R^{18}$ ;

R<sup>8</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

R<sup>9</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

 $R^{10}$  is hydrogen,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; wherein  $R^{10}$  is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from  $R^{19}$ ;

R<sup>11</sup> is carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR<sup>c</sup>)(OR<sup>d</sup>), -P(O)(OH)(OR<sup>c</sup>),
-P(O)(OH)(R<sup>d</sup>) or -P(O)(OR<sup>c</sup>)(R<sup>d</sup>) wherein R<sup>c</sup> and R<sup>d</sup> are independently selected from
C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl; or R<sup>11</sup> is a group of formula (IB) or (IC):



wherein:

10

15

20

25

Y is  $-N(R^n)$ -,  $-N(R^n)C(O)$ -,  $-N(R^n)C(O)(CR^sR^t)_vN(R^n)C(O)$ -, -O-, and -S(O)a-; wherein a is 0-2, v is 1-2,  $R^s$  and  $R^t$  are independently selected from hydrogen or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl optionally substituted by  $R^{26}$  and  $R^n$  is hydrogen or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

R<sup>12</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

 $R^{13}$  and  $R^{14}$  are independently selected from hydrogen,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; and when q is 0,  $R^{14}$  may additionally be selected from hydroxy; wherein  $R^{13}$  and  $R^{14}$  may be independently optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from  $R^{20}$ ;

 $R^{15}$  is carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, phosphono,  $-P(O)(OR^e)(OR^f)$ ,  $-P(O)(OH)(OR^e)$ ,  $-P(O)(OH)(R^e)$  or  $-P(O)(OR^e)(R^f)$  wherein  $R^e$  and  $R^f$  are independently selected from  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;

p is 1-3; wherein the values of R<sup>13</sup> may be the same or different;

q is 0-1;

r is 0-3; wherein the values of R<sup>14</sup> may be the same or different;

m is 0-2; wherein the values of R<sup>10</sup> may be the same or different;

n is 1-3; wherein the values of R<sup>7</sup> may be the same or different;

Ring B is a nitrogen linked heterocyclyl substituted on carbon by one group selected from  $R^{23}$ , and optionally additionally substituted on carbon by one or more  $R^{24}$ ; and wherein if said nitrogen linked heterocyclyl contains an -NH- moiety, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from  $R^{25}$ ;

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033 -5-

R<sup>16</sup>, R<sup>17</sup> and R<sup>18</sup> are independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxycarbonyl, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)sulphamoyl and N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl; wherein R<sup>16</sup>, R<sup>17</sup> and R<sup>18</sup> may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>21</sup>:

5

10

15

20

25

30

R<sup>19</sup>. R<sup>20</sup>. R<sup>24</sup> and R<sup>26</sup> are independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxycarbonyl, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)sulphamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl, carbocyclyl, heterocyclyl, benzyloxycarbonylamino, (C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>3</sub>silyl, sulpho, sulphino, amidino, phosphono,  $-P(O)(OR^a)(OR^b)$ ,  $-P(O)(OH)(OR^a)$ ,  $-P(O)(OH)(R^a)$  or  $-P(O)(OR^a)(R^b)$ , wherein R<sup>a</sup> and R<sup>b</sup> are independently selected from C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl; wherein R<sup>19</sup>, R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>24</sup> and R<sup>26</sup> may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>22</sup>;

R<sup>21</sup> and R<sup>22</sup> are independently selected from halo, hydroxy, cyano, carbamoyl, ureido, amino, nitro, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, methyl, ethyl, methoxy, ethoxy, vinyl, allyl, ethynyl, methoxycarbonyl, formyl, acetyl, formamido, acetylamino, acetoxy, methylamino, dimethylamino, N-methylcarbamoyl, N, N-dimethylcarbamoyl, methylthio, methylsulphinyl, mesyl, N-methylsulphamoyl and N, N-dimethylsulphamoyl;

R<sup>23</sup> is carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR<sup>g</sup>)(OR<sup>h</sup>), -P(O)(OH)(OR<sup>g</sup>), -P(O)(OH)(R<sup>g</sup>) or -P(O)(OR<sup>g</sup>)(R<sup>h</sup>) wherein R<sup>g</sup> and R<sup>h</sup> are independently selected from C1-6alkyl;

R<sup>25</sup> is selected from C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylsulphonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, benzyl, benzyloxycarbonyl, benzoyl and phenylsulphonyl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a compound of formula (I):

wherein:

5

10

15

 $\mathbf{R}^{\mathbf{v}}$  is selected from hydrogen or  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl;

One of  $\mathbb{R}^1$  and  $\mathbb{R}^2$  are selected from hydrogen or  $C_{1\text{-}6}$  alkyl and the other is selected from  $C_{1\text{-}6}$  alkyl;

 $\mathbf{R}^{\mathbf{x}}$  and  $\mathbf{R}^{\mathbf{y}}$  are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, amino, mercapto,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl)amino,  $N,N-(C_{1-6}$ alkyl)2amino,  $C_{1-6}$ alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2;

M is selected from -N- or -CH-;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl, , C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkoxycarbonyl, N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl and N,N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl;

v is 0-5:

one of R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> is a group of formula (IA):

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
A & O \\
R^{11} & R^{0} & R^{0} \\
R^{10} & R^{0} & R^{8} & R^{7}
\end{array}$$

(IA)

R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> and the other of R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl,

5

10

 $N,N-(C_{1-4}alkyl)_2$ carbamoyl,  $C_{1-4}alkylS(O)_a$  wherein a is 0 to 2,  $C_{1-4}alkoxycarbonyl$ ,  $N-(C_{1-4}alkyl)_2$ sulphamoyl; wherein  $R^3$  and  $R^6$  and the other of  $R^4$  and  $R^5$  may be optionally substituted on carbon by one or more  $R^{16}$ ;

X is -O-, -N(R<sup>a</sup>)-, -S(O)<sub>b</sub>- or -CH(R<sup>a</sup>)-; wherein R<sup>a</sup> is hydrogen or  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl and b is 0-2;

**Ring A** is aryl or heteroaryl; wherein Ring A is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from  $\mathbb{R}^{17}$ :

R<sup>7</sup> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; wherein R<sup>7</sup> is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from R<sup>18</sup>;

 $\mathbb{R}^8$  is hydrogen or  $\mathbb{C}_{1-4}$ alkyl;

R<sup>9</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

 $R^{10}$  is hydrogen,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; wherein  $R^{10}$  is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from  $R^{19}$ ;

R<sup>11</sup> is carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR<sup>c</sup>)(OR<sup>d</sup>), -P(O)(OH)(OR<sup>c</sup>),

-P(O)(OH)(R<sup>d</sup>) or -P(O)(OR<sup>c</sup>)(R<sup>d</sup>) wherein R<sup>c</sup> and R<sup>d</sup> are independently selected from

C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl; or R<sup>11</sup> is a group of formula (IB):

wherein:

25

Y is  $-N(R^n)$ -,  $-N(R^n)C(O)$ -, -O-, and -S(O)a-; wherein a is 0-2 and  $R^n$  is hydrogen or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

R<sup>12</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

 $R^{13}$  and  $R^{14}$  are independently selected from hydrogen,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; wherein  $R^{13}$  and  $R^{14}$  may be independently optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from  $R^{20}$ ;

 $R^{15}$  is carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, phosphono,  $-P(O)(OR^e)(OR^f)$ ,  $-P(O)(OH)(OR^e)$ ,  $-P(O)(OH)(R^e)$  or  $-P(O)(OR^e)(R^f)$  wherein  $R^e$  and  $R^f$  are independently selected from  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl;

p is 1-3; wherein the values of R<sup>13</sup> may be the same or different;

30 q is 0-1;

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

r is 0-3; wherein the values of R<sup>14</sup> may be the same or different:

m is 0-2; wherein the values of R<sup>10</sup> may be the same or different:

n is 1-3; wherein the values of R<sup>7</sup> may be the same or different:

R<sup>16</sup>, R<sup>17</sup> and R<sup>18</sup> are independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino,

5 carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxycarbonyl, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)sulphamoyl and N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl; wherein R<sup>16</sup>, R<sup>17</sup> and R<sup>18</sup> may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>21</sup>; 10

R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> are independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxycarbonyl, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)sulphamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl, carbocyclyl, heterocyclyl, sulpho, sulphino, amidino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR<sup>a</sup>)(OR<sup>b</sup>), -P(O)(OH)(OR<sup>a</sup>), -P(O)(OH)(R<sup>a</sup>) or -P(O)(OR<sup>a</sup>)(R<sup>b</sup>), wherein R<sup>a</sup> and R<sup>b</sup> are independently selected from C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl; wherein R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>22</sup>:

15

20

25

R<sup>21</sup> and R<sup>22</sup> are independently selected from halo, hydroxy, cyano, carbamoyl, ureido, amino, nitro, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, methyl, ethyl, methoxy, ethoxy, vinyl, allyl, ethynyl, methoxycarbonyl, formyl, acetyl, formamido, acetylamino, acetoxy, methylamino, dimethylamino, N-methylcarbamoyl, N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl, methylthio, methylsulphinyl, mesyl, N-methylsulphamoyl and N,N-dimethylsulphamoyl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a compound of formula (I):

wherein:

10

15

 $\mathbf{R}^{\mathbf{v}}$  is selected from hydrogen or  $\mathbf{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl;

One of  $\mathbb{R}^1$  and  $\mathbb{R}^2$  are selected from hydrogen or  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl and the other is selected from  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl;

 $\mathbf{R}^{\mathbf{x}}$  and  $\mathbf{R}^{\mathbf{y}}$  are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, amino, mercapto,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl)amino,  $N,N-(C_{1-6}$ alkyl)2amino,  $C_{1-6}$ alkylS(O)a wherein a is 0 to 2;

M is selected from -N- or -CH-;

R<sup>z</sup> is selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkoxycarbonyl, N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)sulphamoyl and N,N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl;

v is 0-5;

one of R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> is a group of formula (IA):

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
A & O \\
R^{11} & R^{9} & R^{8} & R^{7}
\end{array}$$

(IA)

R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> and the other of R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl,

- 10 -

 $N,N-(C_{1-4}alkyl)_2$ carbamoyl,  $C_{1-4}alkylS(O)_a$  wherein a is 0 to 2,  $C_{1-4}alkoxycarbonyl$ ,  $N-(C_{1-4}alkyl)_2$ sulphamoyl; wherein  $R^3$  and  $R^6$  and the other of  $R^4$  and  $R^5$  may be optionally substituted on carbon by one or more  $R^{16}$ ;

X is -O-, -N(R<sup>a</sup>)-, -S(O)<sub>b</sub>- or -CH(R<sup>a</sup>)-; wherein R<sup>a</sup> is hydrogen or  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl and b is 0-2;

Ring A is aryl or heteroaryl; wherein Ring A is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from  $\mathbb{R}^{17}$ :

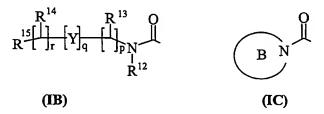
R<sup>7</sup> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; wherein R<sup>7</sup> is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from R<sup>18</sup>:

 $\mathbb{R}^8$  is hydrogen or  $\mathbb{C}_{1-4}$ alkyl;

 $\mathbb{R}^9$  is hydrogen or  $\mathbb{C}_{1-4}$ alkyl;

 $R^{10}$  is hydrogen,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; wherein  $R^{10}$  is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from  $R^{19}$ ;

R<sup>11</sup> is carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR<sup>c</sup>)(OR<sup>d</sup>), -P(O)(OH)(OR<sup>c</sup>),
-P(O)(OH)(R<sup>d</sup>) or -P(O)(OR<sup>c</sup>)(R<sup>d</sup>) wherein R<sup>c</sup> and R<sup>d</sup> are independently selected from
C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl; or R<sup>11</sup> is a group of formula (IB) or (IC):



wherein:

5

10

15

20

25

30

Y is  $-N(R^n)$ -,  $-N(R^n)C(O)$ -,  $-N(R^n)C(O)(CR^sR^t)_vN(R^n)C(O)$ -, -O-, and -S(O)a-; wherein a is 0-2, v is 1-2,  $R^s$  and  $R^t$  are independently selected from hydrogen or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl optionally substituted by  $R^{26}$  and  $R^n$  is hydrogen or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

R<sup>12</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

R<sup>13</sup> and R<sup>14</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; and when q is 0, R<sup>14</sup> may additionally be selected from hydroxy; wherein R<sup>13</sup> and R<sup>14</sup> may be independently optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from R<sup>20</sup>;

 $R^{15}$  is carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, phosphono,  $-P(O)(OR^e)(OR^f)$ ,  $-P(O)(OH)(OR^e)$ ,  $-P(O)(OH)(R^e)$  or  $-P(O)(OR^e)(R^f)$  wherein  $R^e$  and  $R^f$  are independently selected from  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl;

- 11 -

p is 1-3; wherein the values of R<sup>13</sup> may be the same or different; q is 0-1;

r is 0-3; wherein the values of R<sup>14</sup> may be the same or different;

m is 0-2; wherein the values of R<sup>10</sup> may be the same or different;

n is 1-3; wherein the values of R<sup>7</sup> may be the same or different;

5

20

25

30

Ring B is a nitrogen linked heterocyclyl substituted on carbon by one group selected from  $R^{23}$ , and optionally additionally substituted on carbon by one or more  $R^{24}$ ; and wherein if said nitrogen linked heterocyclyl contains an -NH- moiety, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from  $R^{25}$ ;

R<sup>16</sup>, R<sup>17</sup> and R<sup>18</sup> are independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxycarbonyl, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)sulphamoyl and N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl; wherein R<sup>16</sup>, R<sup>17</sup> and R<sup>18</sup> may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>21</sup>;

R<sup>19</sup>, R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>24</sup> and R<sup>26</sup> are independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxycarbonyl, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)sulphamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl, carbocyclyl, heterocyclyl, benzyloxycarbonylamino, sulpho, sulphino, amidino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR<sup>a</sup>)(OR<sup>b</sup>), -P(O)(OH)(OR<sup>a</sup>), -P(O)(OH)(R<sup>a</sup>) or -P(O)(OR<sup>a</sup>)(R<sup>b</sup>), wherein R<sup>a</sup> and R<sup>b</sup> are independently selected from C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl; wherein R<sup>19</sup>, R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>24</sup> and R<sup>26</sup> may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>22</sup>;

R<sup>21</sup> and R<sup>22</sup> are independently selected from halo, hydroxy, cyano, carbamoyl, ureido, amino, nitro, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, methyl, ethyl, methoxy, ethoxy, vinyl, allyl, ethynyl, methoxycarbonyl, formyl, acetyl, formamido, acetylamino, acetoxy, methylamino, dimethylamino, *N*-methylcarbamoyl, *N*,*N*-dimethylcarbamoyl, methylthio, methylsulphinyl, mesyl, *N*-methylsulphamoyl and *N*,*N*-dimethylsulphamoyl;

 $R^{23}$  is carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, phosphono,  $-P(O)(OR^g)(OR^h)$ ,  $-P(O)(OH)(OR^g)$ ,  $-P(O)(OH)(R^g)$  or  $-P(O)(OR^g)(R^h)$  wherein  $R^g$  and  $R^h$  are independently selected from  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;

 $R^{25}$  is selected from  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$ alkanoyl,  $C_{1-6}$ alkylsulphonyl,  $C_{1-6}$ alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl,  $N-(C_{1-6}$ alkyl)carbamoyl,  $N-(C_{1-6}$ alkyl)carbamoyl, benzyl, benzyloxycarbonyl, benzyl and phenylsulphonyl;

5

10

15

20

25

30

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

In this specification the term "alkyl" includes both straight and branched chain alkyl groups but references to individual alkyl groups such as "propyl" are specific for the straight chain version only. For example, "C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl" includes C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-3</sub>alkyl, propyl, isopropyl and *t*-butyl. However, references to individual alkyl groups such as 'propyl' are specific for the straight chained version only and references to individual branched chain alkyl groups such as 'isopropyl' are specific for the branched chain version only. A similar convention applies to other radicals, for example "phenylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl" would include phenylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, benzyl, 1-phenylethyl and 2-phenylethyl. The term "halo" refers to fluoro, chloro, bromo and iodo.

Where optional substituents are chosen from "one or more" groups it is to be understood that this definition includes all substituents being chosen from one of the specified groups or the substituents being chosen from two or more of the specified groups.

"Heteroaryl" is a totally unsaturated, mono or bicyclic ring containing 3-12 atoms of which at least one atom is chosen from nitrogen, sulphur or oxygen, which may, unless otherwise specified, be carbon or nitrogen linked. Preferably "heteroaryl" refers to a totally unsaturated, monocyclic ring containing 5 or 6 atoms or a bicyclic ring containing 9 or 10 atoms of which at least one atom is chosen from nitrogen, sulphur or oxygen, which may, unless otherwise specified, be carbon or nitrogen linked. Examples and suitable values of the term "heteroaryl" are thienyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrrolyl, thiadiazolyl, isothiazolyl, triazolyl, pyranyl, indolyl, pyrimidyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyridyl and quinolyl. Preferably the term "heteroaryl" refers to thienyl or indolyl.

"Aryl" is a totally unsaturated, mono or bicyclic carbon ring that contains 3-12 atoms. Preferably "aryl" is a monocyclic ring containing 5 or 6 atoms or a bicyclic ring containing 9 or 10 atoms. Suitable values for "aryl" include phenyl or naphthyl. Particularly "aryl" is phenyl.

A "heterocyclyl" is a saturated, partially saturated or unsaturated, mono or bicyclic ring containing 3-12 atoms of which at least one atom is chosen from nitrogen, sulphur or oxygen, which may, unless otherwise specified, be carbon or nitrogen linked, wherein a -CH2group can optionally be replaced by a -C(O)- or a ring sulphur atom may be optionally oxidised to form the S-oxides. Preferably a "heterocyclyl" is a saturated, partially saturated or unsaturated, mono or bicyclic ring containing 5 or 6 atoms of which at least one atom is chosen from nitrogen, sulphur or oxygen, which may, unless otherwise specified, be carbon or nitrogen linked, wherein a -CH<sub>2</sub>- group can optionally be replaced by a -C(O)- or a ring sulphur atom may be optionally oxidised to form S-oxide(s). Examples and suitable values of the term "heterocyclyl" are thiazolidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrrolinyl, 2-pyrrolidonyl, 2,5-dioxopyrrolidinyl, 2-benzoxazolinonyl, 1,1-dioxotetrahydrothienyl, 2,4-dioxoimidazolidinyl, 2-oxo-1,3,4-(4-triazolinyl), 2-oxazolidinonyl, 5,6-dihydrouracilyl, 1,3-benzodioxolyl, 1,2,4-oxadiazolyl, 2-azabicyclo[2.2.1]heptyl, 4-thiazolidonyl, morpholino, 2-oxotetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuranyl, benzothienyl, tetrahydropyranyl, piperidyl, 1-oxo-1,3-dihydroisoindolyl, piperazinyl, thiomorpholino, 1,1-dioxothiomorpholino, tetrahydropyranyl, 1,3-dioxolanyl, homopiperazinyl, thienyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrrolyl, thiadiazolyl, isothiazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl, 1,3,4-triazolyl, pyranyl, indolyl, pyrimidyl, thiazolyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyridyl, 4-pyridonyl, quinolyl and 1-isoquinolonyl.

5

10

15

20

25

30

A "nitrogen linked heterocyclyl" is a saturated, partially saturated or unsaturated, mono or bicyclic ring containing 3-12 atoms of which at least one atom is nitrogen and the heterocyclyl is linked to the carbonyl group of formula (IC) via this nitrogen, which may additionally contain further heteroatoms chosen from nitrogen, sulphur or oxygen, wherein a -CH<sub>2</sub>- group can optionally be replaced by a -C(O)- or a ring sulphur atom may be optionally oxidised to form the S-oxides. Preferably a "nitrogen linked heterocyclyl" is a saturated, partially saturated or unsaturated, mono or bicyclic ring containing 5 or 6 atoms of which at least one atom is nitrogen and the heterocyclyl is linked to the carbonyl group of formula (IC) via this nitrogen, which may additionally contain further heteroatoms chosen from nitrogen, sulphur or oxygen, wherein a -CH<sub>2</sub>- group can optionally be replaced by a -C(O)- or a ring sulphur atom may be optionally oxidised to form the S-oxides. Examples and suitable values of the term "nitrogen linked heterocyclyl" are morpholino, pyrrolidin-1-yl, imidazol-1-yl, pyrazolidin-1-yl, piperidin-1-yl and piperazin-1-yl. Particularly a "nitrogen linked heterocyclyl" is pyrrolidin-1-yl.

A "carbocyclyl" is a saturated, partially saturated or unsaturated, mono or bicyclic carbon ring that contains 3-12 atoms; wherein a -CH<sub>2</sub>- group can optionally be replaced by a -C(O)-. Preferably "carbocyclyl" is a monocyclic ring containing 5 or 6 atoms or a bicyclic ring containing 9 or 10 atoms. Suitable values for "carbocyclyl" include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, 1-oxocyclopentyl, cyclopentyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexenyl, phenyl, naphthyl, tetralinyl, indanyl or 1-oxoindanyl. Particularly "carbocyclyl" is cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, 1-oxocyclopentyl, cyclopentyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexenyl, phenyl or 1-oxoindanyl.

5

10

15

20

25

30

An example of "C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoyloxy" and "C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyloxy" is acetoxy. Examples of "C<sub>1-6</sub>alkoxycarbonyl" and "C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxycarbonyl" include methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, nand t-butoxycarbonyl. Examples of "C<sub>1-6</sub>alkoxy" and "C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy" include methoxy, ethoxy and propoxy. Examples of "C1-6alkanoylamino" and "C1-4alkanoylamino" include formamido, acetamido and propionylamino. Examples of "C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2" and "C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O), wherein a is 0 to 2" include methylthio, ethylthio, methylsulphinyl, ethylsulphinyl, mesyl and ethylsulphonyl. Examples of "C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoyl" and "C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyl" include propionyl and acetyl. Examples of "N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino" and "N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)amino" include methylamino and ethylamino. Examples of "N,N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino" and "N.N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino" include di-N-methylamino, di-(N-ethyl)amino and N-ethyl-N-methylamino. Examples of "C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl" and "C<sub>2-4</sub>alkenyl" are vinyl, allyl and 1-propenyl. Examples of "C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl" and "C<sub>2-4</sub>alkynyl" are ethynyl, 1-propynyl and 2-propynyl. Examples of "N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)sulphamoyl" and "N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)sulphamoyl" are N-( $C_{1-3}$ alkyl)sulphamoyl, N-(methyl)sulphamoyl and N-(ethyl)sulphamoyl. Examples of "N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl" "N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl" are N,N-(dimethyl)sulphamoyl and N-(methyl)-N-(ethyl)sulphamoyl. Examples of "N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl" and "N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl" are methylaminocarbonyl and ethylaminocarbonyl. Examples of "N,N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl" and "N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl" are dimethylaminocarbonyl and methylethylaminocarbonyl. Example of "C1-6alkylsulphonyl" are mesyl and ethylsulphonyl. Examples of "(C<sub>1.4</sub>alkyl)<sub>3</sub>silyl," include trimethylsilyl and methyldiethylsilyl.

A suitable pharmaceutically acceptable salt of a compound of the invention is, for example, an acid-addition salt of a compound of the invention which is sufficiently basic, for example, an acid-addition salt with, for example, an inorganic or organic acid, for example hydrochloric, hydrobromic, sulphuric, phosphoric, trifluoroacetic, citric, acetate or maleic acid. In addition a suitable pharmaceutically acceptable salt of a compound of the invention

which is sufficiently acidic is an alkali metal salt, for example a sodium or potassium salt, an alkaline earth metal salt, for example a calcium or magnesium salt, an ammonium salt or a salt with an organic base which affords a physiologically-acceptable cation, for example a salt with methylamine, dimethylamine, trimethylamine, piperidine, morpholine or tris-(2-hydroxyethyl)amine.

5

10

15

20

25

30

The compounds of the formula (I) may be administered in the form of a pro-drug which is broken down in the human or animal body to give a compound of the formula (I). examples of pro-drugs include *in vivo* hydrolysable esters and *in vivo* hydrolysable amides of a compound of the formula (I).

An *in vivo* hydrolysable ester of a compound of the formula (I) containing carboxy or hydroxy group is, for example, a pharmaceutically acceptable ester which is hydrolysed in the human or animal body to produce the parent acid or alcohol. Suitable pharmaceutically acceptable esters for carboxy include C<sub>1-6</sub>alkoxymethyl esters for example methoxymethyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoyloxymethyl esters for example pivaloyloxymethyl, phthalidyl esters, C<sub>3-8</sub>cycloalkoxycarbonyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl esters for example 1-cyclohexylcarbonyloxyethyl; 1,3-dioxolen-2-onylmethyl esters for example 5-methyl-1,3-dioxolen-2-onylmethyl; and C<sub>1-6</sub>alkoxycarbonyloxyethyl esters for example 1-methoxycarbonyloxyethyl and may be formed at any carboxy group in the compounds of this invention.

An *in vivo* hydrolysable ester of a compound of the formula (I) containing a hydroxy group includes inorganic esters such as phosphate esters and α-acyloxyalkyl ethers and related compounds which as a result of the *in vivo* hydrolysis of the ester breakdown to give the parent hydroxy group. Examples of α-acyloxyalkyl ethers include acetoxymethoxy and 2,2-dimethylpropionyloxy-methoxy. A selection of *in vivo* hydrolysable ester forming groups for hydroxy include alkanoyl, benzoyl, phenylacetyl and substituted benzoyl and phenylacetyl, alkoxycarbonyl (to give alkyl carbonate esters), dialkylcarbamoyl and *N*-(dialkylaminoethyl)-*N*-alkylcarbamoyl (to give carbamates), dialkylaminoacetyl and carboxyacetyl. Examples of substituents on benzoyl include morpholino and piperazino linked from a ring nitrogen atom via a methylene group to the 3- or 4- position of the benzoyl ring.

A suitable value for an *in vivo* hydrolysable amide of a compound of the formula (I) containing a carboxy group is, for example, a N-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or N,N-di-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl amide such as N-methyl, N-ethyl, N-propyl, N,N-dimethyl, N-ethyl-N-methyl or N,N-diethyl amide.

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

Some compounds of the formula (I) may have chiral centres and/or geometric isomeric centres (E- and Z- isomers), and it is to be understood that the invention encompasses all such optical, diastereoisomers and geometric isomers that possess IBAT inhibitory activity.

The invention relates to any and all tautomeric forms of the compounds of the formula

5 (I) that possess IBAT inhibitory activity.

It is also to be understood that certain compounds of the formula (I) can exist in solvated as well as unsolvated forms such as, for example, hydrated forms. It is to be understood that the invention encompasses all such solvated forms which possess IBAT inhibitory activity.

Particular values are as follows. Such values may be used where appropriate with any of the definitions, claims or embodiments defined hereinbefore or hereinafter.

R<sup>v</sup> is hydrogen.

R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl.

R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are both butyl.

One of  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  is ethyl and the other is butyl.

One of R<sup>x</sup> and R<sup>y</sup> is hydrogen and the other is hydroxy.

Rx and Ry are both hydrogen.

M is -N-.

M is -CH-.

20 v is 0 or 1.

v is 0.

R<sup>z</sup> is C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl.

R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are hydrogen.

R<sup>4</sup> is methylthio or bromo.

25 R<sup>4</sup> is methylthio.

R<sup>4</sup> is halo, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0.

R<sup>4</sup> is bromo, methyl or methylthio.

R<sup>5</sup> is a group of formula (IA) (as depicted above) wherein:

X is -O-;

Ring A is phenyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from R<sup>17</sup>; n is 1;

R<sup>7</sup> is hydrogen;

```
R<sup>8</sup> is hydrogen:
                 R<sup>9</sup> is hydrogen;
                 m is 0;
                R<sup>11</sup> is a group of formula (IB) (as depicted above) wherein:
                R<sup>12</sup> is hydrogen;
 5
                p is 1 or 2;
                R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen;
                 q is 0;
                r is 0;
                R<sup>15</sup> is carboxy or sulpho; and
10
                R<sup>17</sup> is hydroxy.
                \mathbb{R}^5 is N-{(R)-\alpha-[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)-\alpha-
       [N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy or N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-(2-R)-\alpha]\}
       sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy.
                R<sup>5</sup> is a group of formula (IA) (as depicted above) wherein:
15
                X is -O-:
                Ring A is phenyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from R<sup>17</sup>:
                n is 1;
                R<sup>7</sup> is hydrogen;
                R<sup>8</sup> is hydrogen;
20
                R<sup>9</sup> is hydrogen;
                m is 0;
                R<sup>11</sup> is carboxy, a group of formula (IB) (as depicted above) or a group of formula (IC)
       (as depicted above) wherein:
                R<sup>12</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;
25
                p is 1 or 2;
                R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl optionally substituted by R<sup>20</sup> wherein R<sup>20</sup> is hydroxy,
       carbamoyl, amino, benzyloxycarbonylamino or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0;
                R<sup>14</sup> is hydrogen or hydroxy;
30
                q is 0;
                r is 0 or 1;
                R<sup>15</sup> is carboxy or sulpho:
```

30

R<sup>17</sup> is hydroxy; and

Ring B is pyrrolidin-1-yl substituted on carbon by one group selected from  $R^{23}$ ; wherein  $R^{23}$  is carboxy.

 $\mathbb{R}^5$  is  $N-\{(\mathbb{R})-\alpha-[N-(\operatorname{carboxymethyl})\operatorname{carbamoyl}]$  benzyl $\}$  carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(\mathbb{R})-\alpha-(\mathbb{R})-\alpha-(\mathbb{R})\}$ [N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(2-5 hydroxyethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxyethyl)$ carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxypropyl)carbamoyl]\}$ benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthio-ethyl)carbamoyl] 10 benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-carbamoyl$ ethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4$ hydroxybenzyl\carbamoy\methoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]-4$ hydroxybenzyl]carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]-4$ hydroxybenzylcarbamoylmethoxy,  $N-{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-hydroxyethyl) carbamoyl}-$ 15 4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl] benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl] benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-methylpropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}$ carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-3-methylbutyl)carbamoyl]benzyl\}$ carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(1-(S)-1-carboxy-2-(S)-2-methylbutyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} 20 carbamoylmethoxy, N-((R)- $\alpha$ -carboxy-4-hydroxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-4-aminobutyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-((R)- $\alpha$ -{N-[(S)-1carboxy-4-(benzyloxycarbonylamino)butyl]carbamoyl}benzyl)carbamoylmethoxy, N-[(R)- $\alpha$ -((S)-2-carboxypyrrolidin-1-ylcarbonyl)benzyl]carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(carboxymethyl)-N-methylcarbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(1-(R)-2-(R)-25 1-carboxy-1-hydroxyprop-2-yl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(sulphomethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-((R)-α-carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4$ hydroxybenzyl $\{$ carbamoy $\}$ methoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-methylpropyl<math>\}$ carbamoy $\}$ 4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxybutyl)carbamoyl]-4-$ 

hydroxybenzyl\carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4-

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

```
hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy or N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthio-
      ethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy.
               R<sup>5</sup> is a group of formula (IA) (as depicted above) wherein:
               X is -O-;
               Ring A is phenyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from R<sup>17</sup>;
5
               n is 1;
               R<sup>7</sup> is hydrogen;
               R<sup>8</sup> is hydrogen:
               R<sup>9</sup> is hydrogen:
10
               m is 0:
               R<sup>11</sup> is carboxy, a group of formula (IB) (as depicted above) or a group of formula (IC)
       (as depicted above) wherein:
               R<sup>12</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;
               p is 1 or 2;
               R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl optionally substituted by R<sup>20</sup> wherein R<sup>20</sup> is hydroxy,
15
       carbamoyl, amino, benzyloxycarbonylamino, C1-4alkylS(O)a wherein a is 0 or (C1-4alkyl)3silyl;
               R<sup>14</sup> is hydrogen or hydroxy or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl; wherein R<sup>14</sup> may be optionally substituted by
       one or more substituents selected from R<sup>20</sup>;
                Y is -N(R^n)C(O)- wherein R^n is hydrogen;
20
               q is 0 or 1;
               r is 0 or 1;
               R<sup>15</sup> is carboxy or sulpho;
               R<sup>17</sup> is hydroxy; and
               R<sup>20</sup> is selected from hydroxy;
                Ring B is pyrrolidin-1-yl or azetidinyl substituted on carbon by one group selected
25
       from R<sup>23</sup>, and optionally additionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>24</sup>; wherein R<sup>23</sup> is
       carboxy and R<sup>24</sup> is hydroxy.
                R^5 is N-{(R)-\alpha-[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)-\alpha-
       [N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl]carbamoylmethoxy, N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-(2-\alpha)]\}
       sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)-\alpha-{N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-
30
       hydroxyethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxyethyl)
       carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxypropyl)carbamoyl]\}
```

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthio-ethyl)carbamoyl] benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-carbamoyl-ethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]-4-

- hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-hydroxyethyl) carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]-benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]-benzyl}
- carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-3-methylbutyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(1-(S)-1-carboxy-2-(S)-2-methylbutyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy, N-((R)- $\alpha$ -carboxy-4-hydroxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-4-aminobutyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-((R)- $\alpha$ -{N-[(S)-1-carboxy-4-(benzyloxycarbonylamino)butyl]carbamoyl}benzyl)carbamoylmethoxy, N-[(R)- $\alpha$ - $\alpha$ -(R)- $\alpha$ -
- ((S)-2-carboxypyrrolidin-1-ylcarbonyl)benzyl]carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(carboxymethyl)-N-methylcarbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(1-(R)-2-(R)-1-carboxy-1-hydroxyprop-2-yl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(sulphomethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-((R)- $\alpha$ -carboxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4-
- 20 hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-methylpropyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxybutyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthio-ethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-
- carboxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-{(S)-1-[N-((S)-2-hydroxy-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]propyl}carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[2-(S)-2-(carboxy)-4-(R)-4-(hydroxy)pyrrolidin-1-ylcarbonyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[2-(S)-2-(carboxy)azetidin-1-ylcarbonyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-{(S)-1-[N-((S)-1-
- carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]ethyl}carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((R)-1-carboxy-3,3-dimethylbutyl)carbamoyl] benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-

carboxy-3,3-dimethylbutyl)carbamoyl] benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((R)-1-\alpha]]\}$ carboxy-3,3-dimethylbutyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-((R)- $\alpha$ -{N-[(S)-1-carboxy-2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl] carbamoyl}-4-hydroxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy or N- $((R)-\alpha-\{N-[(R)-1-carboxy-2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl]carbamoyl\}-4-$ 

5 hydroxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy.

R<sup>5</sup> is hydrogen.

R<sup>4</sup> is a group of formula (IA).

R<sup>5</sup> is a group of formula (IA).

Therefore in an further aspect of the invention, there is provided a compound of

10 formula (I) (as depicted above) wherein:

R<sup>v</sup> is hydrogen;

R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

R<sup>x</sup> and R<sup>y</sup> are both hydrogen:

M is -N-;

15 v is 0;

R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are hydrogen:

R<sup>4</sup> is halo, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0;

R<sup>5</sup> is a group of formula (IA) (as depicted above) wherein:

X is -O-;

Ring A is phenyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from R<sup>17</sup>; 20

n is 1;

R<sup>7</sup> is hydrogen;

R<sup>8</sup> is hydrogen:

R<sup>9</sup> is hydrogen:

25 m is 0:

> R<sup>11</sup> is carboxy, a group of formula (IB) (as depicted above) or a group of formula (IC) (as depicted above) wherein:

R<sup>12</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

p is 1 or 2;

R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl optionally substituted by R<sup>20</sup> wherein R<sup>20</sup> is hydroxy. 30. carbamoyl, amino, benzyloxycarbonylamino, C1-4alkylS(O)a wherein a is 0 or (C1-4alkyl)3silyl; WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

```
R<sup>14</sup> is hydrogen or hydroxy or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl; wherein R<sup>14</sup> may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from R<sup>20</sup>;
```

Y is -N(R<sup>n</sup>)C(O)- wherein R<sup>n</sup> is hydrogen; q is 0 or 1;

5 r is 0 or 1;

R<sup>15</sup> is carboxy or sulpho;

R<sup>17</sup> is hydroxy; and

R<sup>20</sup> is selected from hydroxy; and

Ring B is pyrrolidin-1-yl or azetidinyl substituted on carbon by one group selected from R<sup>23</sup>, and optionally additionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>24</sup>; wherein R<sup>23</sup> is carboxy and R<sup>24</sup> is hydroxy;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

Therefore in an additional aspect of the invention, there is provided a compound of formula (I) (as depicted above) wherein:

15 R<sup>v</sup> is hydrogen;

R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are both butyl;

Rx and Ry are both hydrogen;

M is -N-;

v is 0;

20 R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are hydrogen;

R<sup>4</sup> is bromo, methyl or methylthio; and

 $R^5$  is N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}

25 hydroxyethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxyethyl) carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxypropyl)carbamoyl] benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthio-ethyl)carbamoyl] benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-carbamoyl-

ethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-

30 hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)-α-[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]-4hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)-α-[N-((S)-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]-4hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)-α-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-hydroxyethyl)carbamoyl]-

- 4-hydroxybenzyl carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]\}$ benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl] benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-methylpropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-3-methylbutyl)carbamoyl]benzyl\}$ 5 carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-(1-(S)-1-carboxy-2-(S)-2-methylbutyl)carbamoyl]benzyl\}$ carbamoylmethoxy, N-((R)- $\alpha$ -carboxy-4-hydroxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-4-aminobutyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-((R)- $\alpha$ -{N-[(S)-1carboxy-4-(benzyloxycarbonylamino)butyl]carbamoyl} benzyl)carbamoylmethoxy, N-[(R)-α-((S)-2-carboxypyrrolidin-1-ylcarbonyl)benzyl]carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-\alpha]\}$ 10 1-carboxy-1-hydroxyprop-2-yl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(sulphomethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl]carbamoylmethoxy, N-((R)- $\alpha$ -carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4$ hydroxybenzyl carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-methylpropyl)carbamoyl]$ 15 4-hydroxybenzyl carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxybutyl)carbamoyl]-4$ hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthio$ ethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-20 ((S)-2-hydroxy-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]propyl}carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N- $\{(R)-\alpha-[2-(S)-2-(carboxy)-4-(R)-4-(hydroxy)pyrrolidin-1-ylcarbonyl]benzyl\}$ carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[2-(S)-2-(carboxy)azetidin-1-ylcarbonyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-\{(S)-1-[N-((S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-($ carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]ethyl}carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((R)-1-\alpha-(R)$ 25 carboxy-3,3-dimethylbutyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-((R)- $\alpha$ -{N-
- 30 hydroxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy;
  or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

 $((R)-\alpha-\{N-[(R)-1-carboxy-2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl]carbamoyl\}-4-$ 

[(S)-1-carboxy-2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl] carbamoyl}-4-hydroxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy or N-

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

In another aspect of the invention, preferred compounds of the invention are any one of examples 5, 6, 7, 9, 11, 14, 15, 26, 27, 28, 30 or 33 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

In another aspect of the invention, preferred compounds of the invention are any one of the examples or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

Preferred aspects of the invention are those which relate to the compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

Another aspect of the present invention provides a process for preparing a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof which process (wherein variable groups are, unless otherwise specified, as defined in formula (I)) comprises of:

Process 1): for compounds of formula (I) wherein X is -O-,-NR<sup>a</sup> or -S-; reacting a compound of formula (IIa) or (IIb):

with a compound of formula (III):

10

15

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
A & O \\
R^{11} & R^{10} & R^{10} & R^{10} \\
R^{10} & R^{10} & R^{10} & R^{10}
\end{array}$$
(III)

20 wherein L is a displaceable group;

Process 2): reacting an acid of formula (IVa) or (IVb):

HO 
$$R^6$$
  $R^6$   $R^6$   $R^7$   $R^1$   $R^7$   $R^7$   $R^7$   $R^7$   $R^7$   $R^8$   $R^7$   $R^8$   $R^8$ 

or an activated derivative thereof; with an amine of formula (V):

**(V)**;

5

Process 3): for compounds of formula (I) wherein R<sup>11</sup> is a group of formula (IB); reacting a compound of formula (I) wherein R<sup>11</sup> is carboxy with an amine of formula (VI):

$$\begin{array}{c|cccc}
R^{14} & R^{13} \\
R^{15} & & & \\
R^{15} & & & \\
& & & \\
R^{17} & & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
&$$

10 Process 4) for compounds of formula (I) wherein one of R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>17</sup>; reacting a compound of formula (VIIa) or (VIIb):

wherein L is a displaceable group; with a thiol of formula (VIII):

## $R^m$ -H

### (VIII)

wherein R<sup>m</sup> is C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>16</sup>;

5 Process 5): for compounds of formula (I) wherein R<sup>11</sup> is carboxy; deprotecting a compound of formula (IXa):

(IXa)

or (IXb):

10

(IXb)

wherein  $R^p$  together with the -OC(O)- group to which it is attached forms an ester; Process 6): for compounds of formula (I) wherein  $R^{11}$  is a group of formula (IB) and  $R^{15}$  is carboxy; deprotecting a compound of formula (Xa):

$$R^{PO} \xrightarrow[R^{14}]{} R^{13} \xrightarrow[R^{13}]{} 0 \xrightarrow[A]{} A^{R^{8}} \xrightarrow[R^{7}]{} R^{8} \xrightarrow[A^{7}]{} R^{5} \xrightarrow[A^{7}]{} 0 \xrightarrow[A^{7}]{} X^{8} \xrightarrow[$$

(Xa)

or (Xb):

(Xb)

5

wherein  $R^p$  together with the -OC(O)- group to which it is attached forms an ester; Process 7): for compounds of formula (I) wherein  $R^{11}$  is a group of formula (IB) and  $N(R^n)C(O)$ -; reacting an acid of formula (XIa):

(XIa)

10

or (XIb):

HO
$$R^{13}$$
 $R^{13}$ 
 $R^{13}$ 
 $R^{13}$ 
 $R^{13}$ 
 $R^{13}$ 
 $R^{13}$ 
 $R^{13}$ 
 $R^{13}$ 
 $R^{13}$ 
 $R^{14}$ 
 $R^{15}$ 
 $R^{15}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 

(XIb)

or an activated derivative thereof; with an amine of formula (XII):

$$\begin{array}{c}
R^{14} \\
R^{15} \\
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
R^{n} \\
\end{array}$$

(XII)

5

10

15

20

and thereafter if necessary or desirable:

- i) converting a compound of the formula (I) into another compound of the formula (I);
- ii) removing any protecting groups;
- iii) forming a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug.

L is a displaceable group, suitable values for L are for example, a halogeno or sulphonyloxy group, for example a chloro, bromo, methanesulphonyloxy or toluene-4-sulphonyloxy group.

 $R^p$  together with the -OC(O)- group to which it is attached forms an ester. Preferably  $R^p$  is methyl or ethyl. More preferably  $R^p$  is methyl. In another aspect of the invention Rp is  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or phenyl $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, preferably  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl or benzyl, more preferably t-butyl, methyl, ethyl or benzyl.

Specific reaction conditions for the above reactions are as follows.

The bicyclic ring systems of the present invention may be assembled according to Scheme Ia or Scheme Ib. The skilled person will appreciate to make any of the above identified intermediates the value of R<sup>4</sup> or R<sup>5</sup> in the following schemes would be replaced with the appropriate group. For example, to synthesize a compound of formula (IIa) R<sup>4</sup> would be HX in the following scheme.

CuBr, 
$$K_2CO_3$$
DMF

R5

R6 O,  $O$ 
R7

R1

R2

R8 O,  $O$ 
R8

R6 O,  $O$ 
R9

R1

PX, base

DMF

(Omit if  $R^v = H$ )

R3

(F)

 $R^2$ 
 $R^2$ 
 $R^2$ 
 $R^3$ 
 $R^3$ 

Scheme 1a

Wherein FGI is functional interconversion of the Br into other values of R<sup>4</sup> using procedures known to the skilled person.

Compounds of formula (A) and (D) are commercially available, or they are known in the literature, or they may be prepared by standard processes known in the art.

Scheme 1b

Process 1): Compounds of formula (IIa) or (IIb) may be reacted with compounds of formula (III) in the presence of a base for example an inorganic base such as sodium carbonate, or an organic base such as Hunigs base, in the presence of a suitable solvent such as acetonitrile, dichloromethane or tetrahydrofuran at a temperature in the range of 0°C to reflux, preferably at or near reflux.

5

10

15

20

25

Compounds of formula (III) are commercially available compounds, or they are known in the literature, or they are prepared by standard processes known in the art.

Process 2) and Process 3) and Process 7): Acids and amines may be coupled together in the presence of a suitable coupling reagent. Standard peptide coupling reagents known in the art can be employed as suitable coupling reagents, or for example carbonyldiimidazole and dicyclohexyl-carbodiimide, optionally in the presence of a catalyst such as dimethylaminopyridine or 4-pyrrolidinopyridine, optionally in the presence of a base for example triethylamine, pyridine, or 2,6-di-alkyl-pyridines such as 2,6-lutidine or 2,6-di-tert-butylpyridine. Suitable solvents include dimethylacetamide, dichloromethane, benzene, tetrahydrofuran and dimethylformamide. The coupling reaction may conveniently be performed at a temperature in the range of -40 to 40°C.

Suitable activated acid derivatives include acid halides, for example acid chlorides, and active esters, for example pentafluorophenyl esters. The reaction of these types of compounds with amines is well known in the art, for example they may be reacted in the presence of a base, such as those described above, and in a suitable solvent, such as those described above. The reaction may conveniently be performed at a temperature in the range of -40 to 40°C.

Compounds of formula (IVa) or (IVb) wherein X=-O-,-NR<sup>a</sup>,-S- may be prepared according to Scheme 2:

(VIIa) 
$$\xrightarrow{\text{HO}} \overset{\text{O}}{\underset{\text{R}^7}{\text{VII}}}^{\text{XH}}$$
(VVI)

NaCO<sub>3</sub>
MeCN

(VIIb)  $\xrightarrow{\text{NaCO}_3}$ 
MeCN

NaCO<sub>3</sub>
MeCN

Scheme 2

5

10

Wherein L in (VIIa) and (VIIb) is a displaceable group e.g. bromo, chloro, fluoro, mesyl or tosyl and wherein X is -O-,-S-, NR<sup>a</sup> (optionally for -SO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>- followed by the oxidation step of Process 1).

Compounds of formula (IVa) and (IVb) where X is -SO- or -SO<sub>2</sub>- may be prepared by oxidising the resulting compounds of formula (IVa) and (IVb) from Scheme 2 where X is -S-.

Compounds of formula (Va) or (Vb) wherein X is -CH<sub>2</sub>- and n is 1 may be prepared according to Scheme 3.

Scheme 3

The skilled person will appreciate that the above reaction scheme may be manipulated to prepare compounds of formula (Va) or (Vb) where n is 2 or 3.

Compounds of formula (XIa) and (XIb) may be prepared by manipulations known to the skilled person of the processes described herein.

Compounds of formula (IVc), (V), (VI), (XII) and (VII) are commercially available compounds, or they are known in the literature, or they are prepared by standard processes known in the art.

5

10

15

20

25

30

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

Process 4): Compounds of formula (VIIa) and (VIIb) may be reacted with thiols of formula (VIII) in the presence of base, for example an inorganic base such as sodium carbonate or an organic base such as Hunigs base, in the presence of a suitable solvent such as DMF or THF at a temperature in the range of 0°C to reflux.

Compounds of formula (VIIa) and (VIIb) may be prepared by any of the procedures above for the preparation of compounds of formula (I), but wherein one of  $\mathbb{R}^4$  and  $\mathbb{R}^5$  is L.

Compounds of formula (VIII) are commercially available compounds, or they are known in the literature, or they are prepared by standard processes known in the art.

Process 5) and Process 6): Esters of formula (IXa), (IXb), (Xa) and (Xb) may be deprotected under standard conditions such as those described below, for Example they may be deprotected with sodium hydroxide in methanol at room temperature.

Esters of formula (IXa), (IXb), (Xa) and (Xb) may be prepared by any of the procedures above for the preparation of compounds of formula (I), but wherein R<sup>11</sup> or R<sup>15</sup> is C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxycarbonyl.

It will be appreciated that certain of the various ring substituents in the compounds of the present invention may be introduced by standard aromatic substitution reactions or generated by conventional functional group modifications either prior to or immediately following the processes mentioned above, and as such are included in the process aspect of the invention. Such reactions and modifications include, for example, introduction of a substituent by means of an aromatic substitution reaction, reduction of substituents, alkylation of substituents and oxidation of substituents. The reagents and reaction conditions for such procedures are well known in the chemical art. Particular examples of aromatic substitution reactions include the introduction of a nitro group using concentrated nitric acid, the introduction of an acyl group using, for example, an acyl halide and Lewis acid (such as aluminium trichloride) under Friedel Crafts conditions; the introduction of an alkyl group using an alkyl halide and Lewis acid (such as aluminium trichloride) under Friedel Crafts conditions; and the introduction of a halogeno group. Particular examples of modifications include the reduction of a nitro group to an amino group by for example, catalytic hydrogenation with a nickel catalyst or treatment with iron in the presence of hydrochloric acid with heating; oxidation of alkylthio to alkylsulphinyl or alkylsulphonyl.

It will also be appreciated that in some of the reactions mentioned herein it may be necessary/desirable to protect any sensitive groups in the compounds. The instances where protection is necessary or desirable and suitable methods for protection are known to those skilled in the art. A particular instance where a protecting group may be used is in protecting the nitrogen in the 2-position of the benzothiadiazepine ring during the synthesis of certain intermediates.

Conventional protecting groups may be used in accordance with standard practice (for illustration see T.W. Green, Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, John Wiley and Sons, 1999). Thus, if reactants include groups such as amino, carboxy or hydroxy it may be desirable to protect the group in some of the reactions mentioned herein.

5

10

15

20

25

30

A suitable protecting group for an amino or alkylamino group is, for example, an acylgroup, for example an alkanoyl group such as acetyl, an alkoxycarbonyl group, for example a methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl or *t*-butoxycarbonyl group, an arylmethoxycarbonyl group, for example benzyloxycarbonyl, or an aroyl group, for example benzoyl. The deprotection conditions for the above protecting groups necessarily vary with the choice of protecting group. Thus, for example, an acyl group such as an alkanoyl or alkoxycarbonyl group or an aroyl group may be removed for example, by hydrolysis with a suitable base such as an alkali metal hydroxide, for example lithium or sodium hydroxide. Alternatively an acyl group such as a *t*-butoxycarbonyl group may be removed, for example, by treatment with a suitable acid as hydrochloric, sulphuric or phosphoric acid or trifluoroacetic acid and an arylmethoxycarbonyl group such as a benzyloxycarbonyl group may be removed, for example, by hydrogenation over a catalyst such as palladium-on-carbon, or by treatment with a Lewis acid for example boron tris(trifluoroacetate). A suitable alternative protecting group for a primary amino group is, for example, a phthaloyl group which may be removed by treatment with an alkylamine, for example dimethylaminopropylamine, or with hydrazine.

A suitable protecting group for a hydroxy group is, for example, an acyl group, for example an alkanoyl group such as acetyl, an aroyl group, for example benzoyl, or an arylmethyl group, for example benzyl. The deprotection conditions for the above protecting groups will necessarily vary with the choice of protecting group. Thus, for example, an acyl group such as an alkanoyl or an aroyl group may be removed, for example, by hydrolysis with a suitable base such as an alkali metal hydroxide, for example lithium or sodium hydroxide. Alternatively an arylmethyl group such as a benzyl group may be removed, for example, by hydrogenation over a catalyst such as palladium-on-carbon.

A suitable protecting group for a carboxy group is, for example, an esterifying group, for example a methyl or an ethyl group which may be removed, for example, by hydrolysis

with a base such as sodium hydroxide, or for example a *t*-butyl group which may be removed, for example, by treatment with an acid, for example an organic acid such as trifluoroacetic acid, or for example a benzyl group which may be removed, for example, by hydrogenation over a catalyst such as palladium-on-carbon.

The protecting groups may be removed at any convenient stage in the synthesis using conventional techniques well known in the chemical art.

5

10

15

20

25

30

As stated hereinbefore the compounds defined in the present invention possess IBAT inhibitory activity. These properties may be assessed, for example, using an *in vitro* test assay for studying the effect on bile acid uptake in IBAT-transfected cells (Smith L., Price-Jones M. J., Hugnes K. T. and Jones N. R. A.; J Biomolecular Screening, 3, 227-230) or *in vivo* by studying the effect on radiolabelled bile acid absorption in mice/rats (Lewis M. C., Brieaddy L. E. and Root C., J., J Lip Res 1995, 36, 1098-1105).

According to a further aspect of the invention there is provided a pharmaceutical composition which comprises a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as defined hereinbefore in association with a pharmaceutically-acceptable diluent or carrier.

The composition may be in a form suitable for oral administration, for example as a tablet or capsule, for parenteral injection (including intravenous, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravascular or infusion) as a sterile solution, suspension or emulsion, for topical administration as an ointment or cream or for rectal administration as a suppository.

In general the above compositions may be prepared in a conventional manner using conventional excipients.

The compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, will normally be administered to a warm-blooded animal at a unit dose within the range 5-5000 mg per square meter body area of the animal, i.e. approximately 0.02-100 mg/kg, preferably 0.02 -50 mg/kg, and this normally provides a therapeutically-effective dose. A unit dose form such as a tablet or capsule will usually contain, for example 1-250 mg of active ingredient. Preferably a daily dose in the range of 1-50 mg/kg, particularly 0.1-10 mg/kg is employed. In another aspect a daily dose in the rage of 0.02-20 mg/kg is employed. However the daily dose will necessarily be varied depending upon the host treated, the particular route of administration, and the severity of the illness being treated. Accordingly the optimum dosage may be determined by the practitioner who is treating any particular patient.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as defined hereinbefore for use in a method of prophylactic or therapeutic treatment of a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

We have found that the compounds defined in the present invention, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, are effective IBAT inhibitors, and accordingly have value in the treatment of disease states associated with hyperlipidaemic conditions.

5

10

15

20

25

30

Thus according to this aspect of the invention there is provided a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as defined hereinbefore for use as a medicament.

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as defined hereinbefore in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the production of an IBAT inhibitory effect in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as defined hereinbefore in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the treatment of hyperlipidaemic conditions in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as defined hereinbefore in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the treatment of dyslipidemic conditions and disorders such as hyperlipidaemia, hypertrigliceridemia, hyperbetalipoproteinemia (high LDL), hyperprebetalipoproteinemia (high VLDL), hypercholesterolemia, hyperlipoproteinemia and hypoalphalipoproteinemia (low HDL) in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as defined hereinbefore in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the treatment of different clinical conditions such as atherosclerosis, arteriosclerosis, arrhythmia, hyper-thrombotic conditions, vascular dysfunction, endothelial dysfunction, heart failure,

coronary heart diseases, cardiovascular diseases, myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, peripheral vascular diseases, inflammation of cardiovascular tissues such as heart, valves, vasculature, arteries and veins, aneurisms, stenosis, restenosis, vascular plaques, vascular fatty streaks, leukocytes, monocytes and/or macrophage infiltration, intimal thickening, medial thinning, infectious and surgical trauma and vascular thrombosis, stroke and transient ischaemic attacks in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

5

10

15

20

25

30

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as defined hereinbefore in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the treatment of atherosclerosis, coronary heart diseases, myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, peripheral vascular diseases, stroke and transient ischaemic attacks in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

According to a further feature of this aspect of the invention there is provided a method for producing an IBAT inhibitory effect in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

According to a further feature of this aspect of the invention there is provided a method of treating hyperlipidemic conditions in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

According to a further feature of this aspect of the invention there is provided a method of treating dyslipidemic conditions and disorders such as hyperlipidaemia, hypertrigliceridemia, hyperbetalipoproteinemia (high LDL), hyperprebetalipoproteinemia (high VLDL), hyperchylomicronemia, hypolipoproteinemia, hypercholesterolemia, hyperlipoproteinemia and hypoalphalipoproteinemia (low HDL) in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

According to a further feature of this aspect of the invention there is provided a method of treating different clinical conditions such as atherosclerosis, arteriosclerosis.

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033 - 38 -

arrhythmia, hyper-thrombotic conditions, vascular dysfunction, endothelial dysfunction, heart failure, coronary heart diseases, cardiovascular diseases, myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, peripheral vascular diseases, inflammation of cardiovascular tissues such as heart, valves, vasculature, arteries and veins, aneurisms, stenosis, restenosis, vascular plaques, vascular fatty streaks, leukocytes, monocytes and/or macrophage infiltration, intimal thickening, medial thinning, infectious and surgical trauma and vascular thrombosis, stroke and transient ischaemic attacks in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

5

10

15

20

25

30

According to a further feature of this aspect of the invention there is provided a method of treating atherosclerosis, coronary heart diseases, myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, peripheral vascular diseases, stroke and transient ischaemic attacks in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

There is evidence that an IBAT inhibitor might potentially be useful in the treatment and/or prevention of gallstones. According to a further feature of this aspect of the invention there is provided a method of treating and / or preventing gallstones in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

The size of the dose required for the therapeutic or prophylactic treatment will necessarily be varied depending on the host treated, the route of administration and the severity of the illness being treated. A unit dose in the range, for example, 0.1-50mg/kg preferably 0.1-10 mg/kg is envisaged.

The IBAT inhibitory activity defined hereinbefore may be applied as a sole therapy or may involve, in addition to a compound of the invention, one or more other substances and/or treatments. Such conjoint treatment may be achieved by way of the simultaneous, sequential or separate administration of the individual components of the treatment. According to this aspect of the invention there is provided a pharmaceutical product comprising a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as defined hereinbefore and an additional IBAT inhibitory substance as

defined hereinbefore and an additional hypolipidaemic agent for the conjoint treatment of hyperlipidaemia.

5

10

15

20

25

30

In another aspect of the invention, the compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, may be administered in association with an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, solvates of such salts or prodrugs thereof. Suitable HMG Co-A reductase inhibitors, pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, solvates of such salts or prodrugs thereof are statins well known in the art. Particular statins are fluvastatin, lovastatin, pravastatin, simvastatin, atorvastatin, cerivastatin, bervastatin, dalvastatin, mevastatin and (E)-7-[4-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-isopropyl-2-[methyl(methylsulphonyl)amino]pyrimidin-5-yl](3R, 5S)-3,5-dihydroxyhept-6-enoic acid (rosuvastatin), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof. A particular statin is atorvastatin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof. A more particular statin is atorvastatin calcium salt. A further particular statin is (E)-7-[4-(4fluor ophenyl) - 6-isopropyl - 2-[methyl (methyl sulphonyl) a mino] pyrimidin - 5-yl] (3R,5S) - 3,5-yl - 2,5-yl - 3,5-yl - 3,5dihydroxyhept-6-enoic acid (rosuvastatin), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof. A preferable particular statin is rosuvastatin calcium salt.

In an additional aspect of the invention, the compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof may be administered in association with an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and/or a bile acid binder thereby avoiding a possible risk of excess of bile acids in colon caused by the inhibition of the ileal bile acid transport system. An excess of bile acids in the visceral contents may cause diarrhoea. Thus, the present invention also provides a treatment of a possible side effect such as diarrhoea in patients during therapy comprising the compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

An HMG CoA-reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof will by its action decrease the endogenous cholesterol available for the bile acid synthesis and have an additive effect in combination with the compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof on lipid lowering.

Suitable bile acid binders for such a combination therapy are resins, such as cholestyramine and cholestipol. One advantage is that the dose of bile acid binder might be kept lower than the therapeutic dose for treatment of cholesterolaemia in single treatment comprising solely a bile acid binder. By a low dose of bile acid binder any possible side effects caused by poor tolerance of the patient to the therapeutic dose could also be avoided.

5

10

15

20

25

30

Therefore in an additional feature of the invention, there is provided a method for producing an IBAT inhibitory effect in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof in simultaneous, sequential or separate administration with an effective amount of an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

Therefore in an additional feature of the invention, there is provided a method for producing an IBAT inhibitory effect in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof in simultaneous, sequential or separate administration with a bile acid binder.

Therefore in an additional feature of the invention, there is provided a method for producing an IBAT inhibitory effect in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof in simultaneous, sequential or separate administration with an effective amount of an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in simultaneous, sequential or separate administration with a bile acid binder.

Therefore in an additional feature of the invention, there is provided a method of treating hyperlipidemic conditions in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof in simultaneous, sequential or separate administration with an effective amount of an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

Therefore in an additional feature of the invention, there is provided a method of treating hyperlipidemic conditions in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof in simultaneous, sequential or separate administration with an effective amount of a bile acid binder.

5

10

15

20

25

30

Therefore in an additional feature of the invention, there is provided a method of treating hyperlipidemic conditions in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof in simultaneous, sequential or separate administration with an effective amount of an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in simultaneous, sequential or separate administration with a bile acid binder.

According to a further aspect of the invention there is provided a pharmaceutical composition which comprises a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in association with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier.

According to a further aspect of the invention there is provided a pharmaceutical composition which comprises a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and a bile acid binder, in association with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier.

According to a further aspect of the invention there is provided a pharmaceutical composition which comprises a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and a bile acid binder in association with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a kit comprising a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate

of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a kit comprising a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and a bile acid binder.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a kit comprising a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof and a bile acid binder.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a kit comprising:

- a) a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in a first unit dosage form;
- b) an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof; in a second unit dosage form; and
  - c) container means for containing said first and second dosage forms.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a kit comprising:

- a) a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in a first unit dosage form;
  - b) a bile acid binder; in a second unit dosage form; and

5

10

25

c) container means for containing said first and second dosage forms.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a kit comprising:

- a) a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in a first unit dosage form;
- b) an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof; in a second unit dosage form;
- 30 c) a bile acid binder; in a third unit dosage form; and
  - d) container means for containing said first, second and third dosage forms.

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a kit comprising:

- a) a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier, in a first unit dosage form;
- b) an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in a second unit dosage form; and
- c) container means for containing said first and second dosage forms.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a kit comprising:

- a) a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier, in a first unit dosage form;
- b) a bile acid binder, in a second unit dosage form; and

5

20

25

30

15 c) container means for containing said first and second dosage forms.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a kit comprising:

- a) a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier, in a first unit dosage form;
- b) an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in a second unit dosage form; and
- c) a bile acid binder; in a third unit dosage form; and
- d) container means for containing said first, second and third dosage forms.

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the production of an IBAT inhibitory effect in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

prodrug thereof, and a bile acid binder, in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the production of an IBAT inhibitory effect in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and a bile acid binder, in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the production of an IBAT inhibitory effect in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

5

10

15

20

25

30

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the treatment of hyperlipidaemic conditions in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, a bile acid binder, in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the treatment of hyperlipidaemic conditions in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and a bile acid binder, in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the treatment of hyperlipidaemic conditions in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a combination treatment comprising the administration of an effective amount of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, optionally together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier, with the simultaneous, sequential or separate administration of an effective amount of an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, optionally together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier to a warm-blooded animal, such as man in need of such therapeutic treatment.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a combination treatment comprising the administration of an effective amount of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, optionally together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier, with the simultaneous, sequential or separate administration of an effective amount of a bile acid binder, optionally together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier to a warm-blooded animal, such as man in need of such therapeutic treatment.

5

10

15

20

25

30

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a combination treatment comprising the administration of an effective amount of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, optionally together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier, with the simultaneous, sequential or separate administration of an effective amount of an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, optionally together with a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient, with the simultaneous, sequential or separate administration of an effective amount of a bile acid binder, optionally together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier to a warm-blooded animal, such as man in need of such therapeutic treatment.

According to an additional further aspect of the present invention there is provided a combination treatment comprising the administration of an effective amount of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, optionally together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier, with the simultaneous, sequential or separate administration one or more of the following agents selected from:

- ➤ a CETP (cholesteryl ester transfer protein) inhibitor, for example those referenced and described in WO 00/38725 page 7 line 22 - page 10, line 17 which are incorporated herein by reference;
- > a cholesterol absorption antagonist for example azetidinones such as SCH 58235 and those described in US 5,767,115 which are incorporated herein by reference;
- > a MTP (microsomal transfer protein) inhibitor for example those described in Science, 282, 751-54, 1998 which are incorporated herein by reference;
- > a fibric acid derivative; for example clofibrate, gemfibrozil, fenofibrate, ciprofibrate and bezafibrate;

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

- > a nicotinic acid derivative, for example, nicotinic acid (niacin), acipimox and niceritrol:
- > a phytosterol compound for example stanols;
- > probucol;
- 5 > an anti-obesity compound for example orlistat (EP 129,748) and sibutramine (GB 2,184,122 and US 4,929,629);
  - > an antihypertensive compound for example an angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor, an angiotensin II receptor antagonist, an andrenergic blocker, an alpha andrenergic blocker, a beta andrenergic blocker, a mixed alpha/beta andrenergic blocker, an andrenergic stimulant, calcium channel blocker, a diuretic or a vasodilator;
  - > insulin:

10

20

25

30

- > sulphonylureas including glibenclamide, tolbutamide;
- > metformin; and/or
- > acarbose;
- or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, optionally together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier to a warm-blooded animal, such as man in need of such therapeutic treatment.

Particular ACE inhibitors or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, solvate of such salts or a prodrugs thereof, including active metabolites, which can be used in combination with a compound of formula (I) include but are not limited to, the following compounds: alacepril, alatriopril, altiopril calcium, ancovenin, benazepril, benazepril hydrochloride, benazeprilat, benzoylcaptopril, captopril, captopril-cysteine, captopril-glutathione, ceranapril, ceranopril, ceronapril, cilazapril, cilazaprilat, delapril, delapril-diacid, enalapril, enalaprilat, enapril, epicaptopril, foroxymithine, fosfenopril, fosenopril, sodium, fosinopril, fosinopril sodium, fosinoprilat, fosinoprilic acid, glycopril, hemorphin-4, idrapril, imidapril, indolapril, indolaprilat, libenzapril, lisinopril, lyciumin A, lyciumin B, mixanpril, moexipril, moexiprilat, moveltipril, muracein A, muracein B, muracein C, pentopril, perindopril, perindoprilat, pivalopril, pivopril, quinapril, quinapril hydrochloride, quinaprilat, ramiprilat, spirapril, spirapril hydrochloride, spiraprilat, spiropril, spiropril hydrochloride, temocapril, temocapril hydrochloride, teprotide, trandolapril, trandolaprilat, utibapril, zabicipril, zabiciprilat, zofenopril and zofenoprilat. Preferred ACE inhibitors for use in the present invention are ramipril, ramiprilat, lisinopril, enalapril and

enalaprilat. More preferred ACE inhibitors for uses in the present invention are ramipril and ramiprilat.

Preferred angiotensin II antagonists, pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, solvate of such salts or a prodrugs thereof for use in combination with a compound of formula (I) include, but are not limited to, compounds: candesartan, candesartan cilexetil, losartan, valsartan, irbesartan, tasosartan, telmisartan and eprosartan. Particularly preferred angiotensin II antagonists or pharmaceutically acceptable derivatives thereof for use in the present invention are candesartan and candesartan cilexetil.

5

10

15

20

25

30

In another aspect of the invention, the compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, may be administered in association with a PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonist, or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, solvates of such salts or prodrugs thereof. Suitable PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonists, pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, solvates of such salts or prodrugs thereof are well known in the art. These include the compounds described in WO 01/12187, WO 01/12612, WO 99/62870, WO 99/62872, WO 99/62871, WO 98/57941, WO 01/40170, J Med Chem. 1996, 39, 665, Expert Opinion on Therapeutic Patents, 10 (5), 623-634 (in particular the compounds described in the patent applications listed on page 634) and J Med Chem, 2000, 43, 527 which are all incorporated herein by reference. Particularly a PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonist refers to WY-14643, clofibrate, fenofibrate, bezafibrate, GW 9578, troglitazone, pioglitazone, rosiglitazone, eglitazone, proglitazone, BRL-49634, KRP-297, JTT-501, SB 213068, GW 1929, GW 7845, GW 0207, L-796449, L-165041 and GW 2433. Particularly a PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonist refers to (S)-2-ethoxy-3-[4-(2-{4methanesulphonyloxyphenyl] ethoxy)phenyl] propanoic acid and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof. Additional suitable PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonists are NN622/Ragaglitazar and BMS 298585.

Therefore in an additional feature of the invention, there is provided a method for producing an IBAT inhibitory effect in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof in simultaneous, sequential or separate administration with an effective amount of a PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonist, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

Therefore in an additional feature of the invention, there is provided a method of treating hyperlipidemic conditions in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof in simultaneous, sequential or separate administration with an effective amount of a PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonist, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

5

10

15

20

25

30

According to a further aspect of the invention there is provided a pharmaceutical composition which comprises a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and a PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonist, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in association with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a kit comprising a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and a PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonist, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a kit comprising:

- a) a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in a first unit dosage form;
- b) a PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonist, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof; in a second unit dosage form; and
- c) container means for containing said first and second dosage forms.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a kit comprising:

- a) a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier, in a first unit dosage form;
- b) a PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonist, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in a second unit dosage form; and
- c) container means for containing said first and second dosage forms.

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and a PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonist, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the production of an IBAT inhibitory effect in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

5

10

15

20

25

30

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, a PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonist, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the treatment of hyperlipidaemic conditions in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

According to a further aspect of the present invention there is provided a combination treatment comprising the administration of an effective amount of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, optionally together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier, with the simultaneous, sequential or separate administration of an effective amount of a PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonist, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, optionally together with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier to a warm-blooded animal, such as man in need of such therapeutic treatment.

In addition to their use in therapeutic medicine, the compounds of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, are also useful as pharmacological tools in the development and standardisation of in vitro and *in vivo* test systems for the evaluation of the effects of inhibitors of IBAT in laboratory animals such as cats, dogs, rabbits, monkeys, rats and mice, as part of the search for new therapeutic agents.

Many of the intermediates described herein are novel and are thus provided as a further feature of the invention. For example compounds of formula (IXa), (IXb), (Xa) and (Xb) show IBAT inhibitory activity when tested in the above referenced *in vitro* test assay and are thus claimed as a further feature of the invention.

Thus in a further feature of the invention, there is provided a compound of formula (IXa), (IXb), (Xa) or (Xb), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

Therefore according to a further aspect of the invention there is provided a pharmaceutical composition which comprises a compound of formula (IXa), (IXb), (Xa) or

(Xb), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as defined hereinbefore in association with a pharmaceutically-acceptable diluent or carrier.

According to an additional aspect of the present invention there is provided a compound of the formula (IXa), (IXb), (Xa) or (Xb), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as defined hereinbefore for use in a method of prophylactic or therapeutic treatment of a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

Thus according to this aspect of the invention there is provided a compound of the formula (IXa), (IXb), (Xa) and (Xb), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as defined hereinbefore for use as a medicament.

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (IXa), (IXb), (Xa) or (Xb), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof as defined hereinbefore in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the production of an IBAT inhibitory effect in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

10

15

20

25

30

According to another feature of the invention there is provided the use of a compound of the formula (IXa), (IXb), (Xa) or (Xb), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof as defined hereinbefore in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the treatment of hyperlipidaemic conditions in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.

According to a further feature of this aspect of the invention there is provided a method for producing an IBAT inhibitory effect in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (IXa), (IXb), (Xa) or (Xb), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

According to a further feature of this aspect of the invention there is provided a method of treating hyperlipidemic conditions in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (IXa), (IXb), (Xa) or (Xb), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

In the above other pharmaceutical composition, process, method, use and medicament manufacture features, the alternative and preferred embodiments of the compounds of the invention described herein also apply.

PCT/GB02/04033

# **Examples**

30

The invention will now be illustrated in the following non limiting examples, in which standard techniques known to the skilled chemist and techniques analogous to those described in these examples may be used where appropriate, and in which, unless otherwise stated:

- 5 (i) evaporations were carried out by rotary evaporation in vacuo and work up procedures were carried out after removal of residual solids such as drying agents by filtration;
  - (ii) all reactions were carried out under an inert atmosphere at ambient temperature, typically in the range 18-25°C, with solvents of HPLC grade under anhydrous conditions, unless otherwise stated;
- (iii) column chromatography (by the flash procedure) was performed on Silica gel 40-63 μm(Merck);
  - (iv) yields are given for illustration only and are not necessarily the maximum attainable;
  - (v) the structures of the end products of the formula (I) were generally confirmed by nuclear (generally proton) magnetic resonance (NMR) and mass spectral techniques; magnetic
- resonance chemical shift values were measured in deuterated CD<sub>3</sub>OD (unless otherwise stated) on the delta scale (ppm downfield from tetramethylsilane); proton data is quoted unless otherwise stated; spectra were recorded on a Varian Mercury-300 MHz, Varian Unity plus-400 MHz, Varian Unity plus-600 MHz or on Varian Inova-500 MHz spectrometer; and peak multiplicities are shown as follows: s, singlet; d, doublet; dd, double doublet; t, triplet; tt,
- triple triplet; q, quartet; tq, triple quartet; m, multiplet; br, broad; LCMS were recorded on a Waters ZMD, LC column xTerra MS C<sub>8</sub>(Waters), detection with a HP 1100 MS-detector diode array equipped; mass spectra (MS) (loop) were recorded on VG Platform II (Fisons Instruments) with a HP-1100 MS-detector diode array equipped; unless otherwise stated the mass ion quoted is (MH<sup>+</sup>);
- (vi) unless further details are specified in the text, analytical high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) was performed on Prep LC 2000 (Waters), Kromasil C<sub>8</sub>, 7μm, (Akzo Nobel); MeCN and de-ionised water 100 mM ammonium acetate as mobile phases, with suitable composition;
  - (vii) intermediates were not generally fully characterised and purity was assessed by thin layer chromatography (TLC), HPLC, infra-red (IR), MS or NMR analysis;
    - (viii) where solutions were dried sodium sulphate was the drying agent;

(ix) where an "ISOLUTE" column is referred to, this means a column containing 2g of silica, the silica being contained in a 6ml disposable syringe and supported by a porous disc of 54Å pore size, obtained from International Sorbent Technology under the name "ISOLUTE";

"ISOLUTE" is a registered trade mark;

5 (x) the following abbreviations may be used hereinbefore or hereinafter:-

DCM dichloromethane;

DMF N,N-dimethylformamide;

TFA trifluoroacetic acid;

TBTU o-Benzotriazol-1-yl-N,N,N',N'-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate;

to ethyl acetate; and MeCN acetonitrile.

### Example 1

15

20

25

 $1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-bromo-8-(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]$ benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

To a solution of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-bromo-8-carboxymethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 2; 0.020 g,  $3.71*10^{-5}$  mol) in DCM (4 ml) was added (R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(t-butoxycarbonylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzylamine (Method 5; 0.013 g,  $4.82*10^{-5}$  mol) and N-methylmorpholine (0.015 ml,  $1.48*10^{-4}$  mol). The mixture was stirred for 5 min and then TBTU (0.015 g,  $4.82*10^{-5}$  mol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight and then TFA (1.5 ml) was added. After 1hour, the solution was diluted with toluene, before the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC using an MeCN / ammonium acetate buffer as eluent. and freeze-dried, to give the title compound in 0.026 g (96 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d6) 0.60-0.80 (m, 6H), 0.80-1.60 (m, 12H), 3.30 (dd (AB), 1H), 3.45 (dd (AB), 1H), 3.85 (brs, 2H), 4.70 (d (AB), 1H), 4.75 (d (AB), 1H), 5.60 (d, 1H), 6.90-7.50 (m, 12H), 8.00-8.10 (m, 1H). 8.55 (d, 1H).

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

# Example 2

5

10

15

20

25

30

 $1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-}\alpha-[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl] benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine$ 

To a solution of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-carboxymethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 3; 0.016 g, 3.16\*10<sup>-5</sup> mol) in DCM (4 ml) was added (R)-α-[*N*-(*t*-butoxycarbonylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzylamine (Method 5; 0.012 g, 4.54\*10<sup>-5</sup> mol) and *N*-methylmorpholine (0.015 ml, 1.48\*10<sup>-4</sup> mol). The mixture was stirred for 5 min and then TBTU (0.015 g, 4.82\*10<sup>-5</sup> mol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight and then TFA (1.5 ml) was added. After 1 hour, the solution was diluted with toluene, before the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC using an MeCN / ammonium acetate buffer as eluent and freeze-dried, to give the title compound in 0.018 g (82 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d6) 0.65-0.80 (m, 6H), 0.85-1.60 (m, 12H), 2.10 (s, 3H), 3.65 (dd (AB), 1H), 3.75 (dd (AB), 1H), 3.85 (brs, 2H), 4.65 (d (AB), 1H), 4.75 (d (AB), 1H), 5.60 (d, 1H), 6.55 (s, 1H), 6.90-7.50 (m, 11H), 8.45 (d, 1H), 8.50-8.60 (m, 1H).

### Example 3

 $1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-bromo-8-(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl\} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine$ 

To a solution of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-bromo-8-carboxymethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 2; 0.050 g, 9.27\*10<sup>-5</sup> mol) in DMF (6 ml) was added 2-{[(2R)-2-amino-2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)ethanoyl]amino} ethanesulphonic acid (Method 6; 0.033 g, 1.20\*10<sup>-4</sup> mol) and N-methylmorpholine (0.041 ml, 3.72\*10<sup>-4</sup> mol). The mixture was stirred for 10 min and then TBTU (0.039 g, 1.21\*10<sup>-4</sup> mol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC using an MeCN / ammonium acetate buffer as eluent and freeze-dried, to give the title compound in 0.039 g (53 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d6) 0.60-0.80 (m, 6H), 0.80-1.60 (m, 12H), 2.40-2.60 (m, 2H), 3.10-3.50 (m, 2H), 3.85 (brs, 2H), 4.70 (d (AB), 1H), 4.75 (d (AB), 1H), 5.25 (d, 1H), 6.70 (s, 1H), 6.75 (s, 1H), 6.85-7.80 (m, 10H), 8.15-8.25 (m, 1H). 8.45 (d, 1H), 9.40 (brs, 1H).

5

10

15

20

25

30

A solution of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-carboxymethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 3; 0.050 g, 0.099 mmol), t-butyl N-[(2R)-2-amino-2-phenylethanoyl]-o-(t-butyl)-L-serinate (Method 14; 0.042 g, 0.120 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (0.033 ml, 0.299 mmol) in DCM (4 ml) was stirred at RT for 10 min, after which TBTU (0.041 g, 0.128 mmol)) was added. After 8h, the conversion was completed; m/z: 839.7. TFA (2 ml) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 12 hours. The solution was transferred to a separating funnel and washed twice with water and then concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC using a gradient of 40-60% MeCN in 0.1M ammonium acetate buffer as eluent. The title compound was obtained in 0.045 g (63 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): 0.60-0.80 (6H, m), 0.85-1.60 (12H, m), 2.10 (3H, s), 3.40-3.65 (2H, m), 3.85 (2H, brs), 4.10-4.20 (1H, m), 4.70 (1H, d(AB)), 4.75 (1H, d(AB)), 5.70 (1H, d), 6.60 (1H, s), 6.85-7.50 (12H, m), 8.50 (1H, d), 8.60 (1H, d); m/z: 839.7.

### Example 5

1.1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxyethyl) carbamoyl|benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

A solution of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 0.055 g, 0.086 mmol), L-alanine, 1,1-dimethylethyl ester, hydrochloride (0.017 g, 0.098 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (0.028 ml, 0.254 mmol) in DCM (5 ml) was stirred at RT for 10 min, after which TBTU (0.033 g, 0.103 mmol) was added. After 16h the conversion was complete; m/z: 767.4. TFA (2.5 ml) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours. The solution was diluted with toluene and then concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC using a gradient of 40-60% MeCN in 0.1M ammonium acetate buffer as eluent. The title compound was obtained in 0.044 g (72 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz): 0.70-0.85 (6H, m), 0.90-1.70 (12H, m), 1.30 (3H, d), 2.10 (3H, s), 3.95 (2H, brs), 4.25-4.40

(1H, m), 4.60 (1H, d(AB)), 4.65 (1H, d(AB)), 5.60 (1H, s), 6.60 (1H, s), 6.95-7.50 (11H, m); m/z: 767.4.

# Example 6

10

15

20

30

5 1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8- $(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxypropyl)$  carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

A solution of 1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)- $\alpha$ carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 0.055 g, 0.086 mmol), butanoic acid, 2-amino-, 1,1-dimethylethyl ester, hydrochloride, (2S)- (0.020 g, 0.102 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (0.035 ml, 0.316 mmol) in DCM (5 ml) was stirred at RT for 10 min, after which TBTU (0.036 g, 0.112 mmol) was added. After 19h additional butanoic acid, 2-amino-, 1,1-dimethylethyl ester, hydrochloride, (2S)- (0.020 g, 0.102 mmol), N-methylmorpholine (0.035 ml, 0.316 mmol) and TBTU (0.036 g, 0.112 mmol) were added. After 68h, the conversion was completed; m/z: 781.5. TFA (2 ml) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 7h and then additional TFA (2 ml) was added. After 18h the reaction was completed. The solution was transferred to a separating funnel and washed twice with water and then concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC using a gradient of 40-60% MeCN in 0.1M ammonium acetate buffer as eluent. The title compound was obtained in 0.026 g (41 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): 0.65 (3H, t), 0.65-0.80 (6H, m), 0.85-1.75 (14H, m), 2.10 (3H, s), 3.80 (2H, brs), 3.95-4.10 (1H, m), 4.65 (1H, d(AB)), 4.75 (1H, d(AB)), 5.65 (1H, d), 6.55 (1H, s), 6.85-7.50 (12H, m), 8.50 (1H, d), 8.60 (1H, d); m/z 781.5.

### Example 7

25 <u>1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[N-((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthioethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine</u>

A solution of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 0.055 g, 0.086 mmol), S-methyl-L-cysteine tert-butyl ester (Pestic. Sci.; EN; 45; 4; 1995; 357-362; 0.020 g, 0.105 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (0.035 ml, 0.317 mmol) in DCM (5 ml) was stirred at RT for 10 min, after which TBTU (0.036 g, 0.112 mmol) was added. After 19h

additional S-methyl-L-cysteine tert-butyl ester (0.020 g, 0.105 mmol), N-methylmorpholine (0.035 ml, 0.317 mmol) and TBTU (0.036 g, 0.112 mmol) were added. After 68 h the conversion was complete; m/z: 811.6 (M-1). TFA (1.5 ml) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 7h and additional TFA (1.5 ml) was added. After 18 h the reaction was complete. The solution was transferred to a separating funnel and washed twice with water and then concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC using a gradient of 40-60% MeCN in 0.1M ammonium acetate buffer as eluent. The title compound was obtained in 0.042 g (65 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): 0.65-0.80 (6H, m), 0.85-1.60 (12H, m), 1.85 (3H, s), 2.10 (3H, s), 2.60-2.80 (2H, m), 3.80 (2H, brs), 4.20-4.35 (1H, m), 4.65 (1H, d(AB)), 4.75 (1H, d(AB)), 5.65 (1H, d), 6.55 (1H, s), 6.85-7.50 (12H, m), 8.45 (1H, d), 8.65 (1H, d).

# Example 8

5

10

15

20

25

30

 $1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-}\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-carbamoyl-ethyl)carbamoyl]} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine$ 

N-Methylmorpholine (0.034 ml, 0.314 mmol), TBTU (0.033 g, 0.103 mmol) and Lasparagine, 1,1-dimethylethyl ester, monohydrochloride (0.021 g, 0.093 mmol) was successively added to a solution of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-αcarboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 0.050 g, 0.078 mmol) in DCM (5 ml). After 2h there were still starting material left and additional N-methylmorpholine (0.035 ml, 0.314 mmol) and TBTU (0.033 g, 0.103 mmol) were added. After 12h the conversion was complete; m/z: 810.5. The solution was diluted with water (~5 ml) and then extracted three times with ether. The combined organic phases was dried over magnesium sulphate and concentrated. The residue was dissolved in a mixture of DCM (5 ml) and TFA (2.5 ml) and the solution was stirred for 21 hours. The solution was transferred to a separating funnel and washed with water and then concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC using a gradient of 40-60% MeCN in 0.1M ammonium acetate buffer as eluent. The title compound was obtained in 0.022 g (37 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): 0.60-0.80 (6H, m), 0.80-1.60 (12H, m), 2.10 (3H, s), 2.25-2.70 (2H, m), 3.80 (2H, brs), 4.35-4.45 (1H, m), 4.65 (1H, d(AB)), 4.75 (1H, d(AB)), 5.60 (1H, d), 6.55 (1H, s), 6.70-7.60 (14H, m), 8.45 (1H, d), 8.55-8.70 (1H, m); m/z 810.5.

5

10

20

25

30

 $\frac{1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl\}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine ammonium salt}{}$ 

The title compound was synthesized using the procedure of Example 3 starting from 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-carboxymethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 3; 43mg, 0.085mmol). The solvent was evaporated after 3 hours and the crude product was purified by preparative HPLC (C8 column, 50x250mm) using a gradient (40/60 to 60/40) of MeCN/0.1M ammonium acetate buffer as eluent. Lyophilization yielded 38mg (57% yield) of the title compound. NMR (400MHz): 0.8 (t, 6H), 1.0-1.2 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.4 (m, 2H), 1.4-1.5 (m, 2H), 1.55-1.7 (m, 2H), 2.1 (s, 3H), 2.8-3.0 (m, 2H), 3.55-3.7 (m, 2H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.6 (ABq, 2H), 5.35 (s, 1H), 6.6 (s, 1H), 6.75 (d, 2H), 7.05 (t, 1H) 7.15-7.4 (m, 7H), 8.15 (t, 1H); m/z: 763.

### 15 Example 10

 $1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-}\alpha-[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine$ 

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[*N*-((R)-α-carboxy-4-hydroxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 18; 50mg, 0.076mmol) was dissolved in DCM (4ml). Glycine *tert*-butyl ester (12mg, 0.091mmol), 2,6-lutidine (20μl, 0.15mmol) and TBTU (30mg, 0.091mmol) were added successively. After 3h DMF (2ml) was added and a clear solution was obtained. Glycine *tert*-butyl ester (0.04mmol), 2,6-lutidine (0.15mmol) and TBTU (2x0.03mmol) were added and the mixture was stirred for an additional 3h. The reaction mixture was concentrated and then extracted between aqueous KHSO<sub>4</sub> (0.05M, pH=1) and EtOAc (2x20ml). The organic phase was washed with brine, dried and concentrated to yield an oil containing the *tert*-butyl ester of the title compound. M/z: 769 and 786 (M+18 (NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>)). DCM (4ml) and TFA (1.5ml) were added. The mixture was stirred for 2 hours and was then concentrated and purified by preparative HPLC on a C8 column (50x250mm) using a gradient (20/80 to 50/50) of MeCN/0.1M ammonium acetate buffer as eluent. Lyophilization yielded the title compound in 52% (28mg). NMR (400MHz) 0.8 (t, 6H), 1.0-1.2 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.4 (m, 2H), 1.4-1.5 (m, 2H), 1.55-1.7 (m, 2H), 2.1 (s, 3H), 3.9

- 58 -

(ABq, 2H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.6 (ABq, 2H), 5.45 (s, 1H), 6.6 (s, 1H), 6.75 (d, 2H), 7.05 (t, 1H) 7.15-7.4 (m, 7H); m/z: 730 (M+18 (NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>).

### Example 11

5 <u>1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[N-((S)-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy</u>)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

The title compound was synthesized by the procedure described in Example 10 starting from 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxy-4-10 hydroxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 18; 50mg, 0.076mmol) and *tert*-butyl L-alaninate hydrochloride. The intermediate *tert*-butyl ester of the title compound was confirmed. M/z: 783 and 800 (M+18 (NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>)). Hydrolysis and purification by preparative HPLC yielded the title compound in 20 mg (37% yield). NMR (400MHz) 0.8 (t, 6H), 1.0-1.2 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.4 (m, 2H), 1.3 (d, 3H), 1.4-1.5 (m, 2H), 1.55-1.7 (m, 2H), 2.1 (s, 3H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.35 (q, 1H), 4.6 (ABq, 2H), 5.45 (s, 1H), 6.6 (s, 1H), 6.75 (d, 2H), 7.05 (t, 1H) 7.15-7.4 (m, 7H); m/z: 744.

# Example 12

20

25

30

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-hydroxyethyl) carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

The title compound was synthesized by the procedure described in Example 10 starting from 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxy-4-hydroxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 18; 50mg, 0.076mmol) and *tert*-butyl *o-(tert*-butyl)-L-serinate hydrochloride. The intermediate ester was confirmed; m/z: 755. Hydrolysis and purification by preparative HPLC yielded the title compound in 19 mg (33% yield). M/z: 743 (M+1). NMR (400MHz): 0.8 (t, 6H), 1.0-1.2 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.4 (m, 2H), 1.4-1.5 (m, 2H), 1.55-1.7 (m, 2H), 2.1 (s, 3H), 3.65-3.8 (m, 2H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.33 (t, 1H), 4.6 (ABq, 2H), 5.5 (s, 1H), 6.6 (s, 1H), 6.75 (d, 2H), 7.05 (t, 1H) 7.15-7.4 (m, 7H).

5

10

15

20

25

30

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[N-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl] benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine ammonium salt

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[*N*-((R)-α-carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 50mg, 0.078mmol) was dissolved in 3ml DCM. Tetrabutylammonium taurine (88mg, 0.236mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred for 30 min. TBTU (30mg, 0.093mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred overnight. The solution was concentrated and purified by preparative HPLC using a C8 column (50x250mm). A gradient (20/80 to 60/40) of MeCN/0.1M ammonium acetate buffer was used as eluent. Lyophilization yielded 43mg of a product mixture, which was further purified by flash chromatography (5g) using a gradient of 3-20% MeOH in DCM as eluent. The fractions containing the title compound were collected and concentrated. MeOH and water were added and lyophilization yielded 17mg (29% yield). NMR (400MHz) 0.8 (t, 6H), 1.0-1.2 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.4 (m, 2H), 1.4-1.5 (m, 2H), 1.55-1.7 (m, 2H), 2.1 (s, 3H), 2.85-3.0 (m, 2H), 3.5-3.7 (m, 2H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.6 (ABq, 2H), 5.45 (s, 1H), 6.6 (s, 1H), 7.05 (t, 1H) 7.15-7.45 (m, 10H); m/z: 747.

### Example 14

 $1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-}\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine$ 

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 50mg, 0.078mmol) was dissolved in 1ml DMF and 1ml DCM. o-tert-Butyl-(L)-threonine tert-butyl ester (22mg, 0.095mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (17μl, 0.154mmol) were added and the mixture was stirred for 20min. TBTU (30mg, 0.093mmol) was added and the solution was stirred for 2 hours and concentrated. DCM (20ml) was added and the solution was washed with 10ml brine, dried and concentrated to 3ml. The intermediate ester was confirmed; m/z: 853. TFA (0.5ml) was added and the solution was stirred overnight. Additionally 0.5ml TFA was added and after 3h the mixture was concentrated and purified by preparative HPLC on a C8 column (50x250mm). A gradient (20/80 to 60/40) of MeCN/0.1M ammonium acetate buffer was used as eluent. Lyophilization gave the title compound in 61% yield (36mg). NMR

- 60 -

(400MHz) 0.8 (t, 6H), 0.9 (d, 3H), 1.0-1.2 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.4 (m, 2H), 1.4-1.5 (m, 2H), 1.55-1.7 (m, 2H), 2.1 (s, 3H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.15-4.25 (m, 1H), 4.35 (d, 1H), 4.6 (ABq, 2H), 5.65 (s, 1H), 6.6 (s, 1H), 7.05 (t, 1H), 7.1 (d, 2H), 7.15-7.4 (m, 6H), 7.5 (d, 2H); m/z: 741.

# 5 Example 15

10

15

20

25

30

 $\frac{1,1-\text{Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-}(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-\text{carboxy-2-methylpropyl})\text{carbamoyl}]\text{benzyl}}{\text{carbamoylmethoxy}-2,3,4,5-\text{tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine}}$ 

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)- $\alpha$ -carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 50mg, 0.078mmol) was dissolved in 2ml DMF. tert-Butyl (L)-valinate (20mg, 0.095mmol) and Nmethylmorpholine (17µl, 0.154mmol) were added and the mixture was stirred for 20min. TBTU (30mg, 0.093mmol) was added and the solution was stirred overnight. Additional Nmethylmorpholine (8µl, 0.078mmol) and TBTU (3x5mg, 0.047mmol) were added and the mixture was stirred overnight and concentrated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (2g) using EtOAc:hexane (3:7) as eluent. The collected fraction was washed with 5%NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (10ml), 0.1M KHSO<sub>4</sub> (15ml) and brine before it was dried and concentrated. The intermediate tert-butyl ester of the title compound was confirmed; m/z: 812  $(M+18 (NH_4^+))$ . DCM (4ml) and TFA (1.5ml) were added and the mixture was stirred overnight, concentrated and purified by preparative HPLC on a C8 column (50x250mm). A gradient (20/80 to 60/40) of MeCN/0.1M ammonium acetate buffer was used as eluent. Lyophilization gave the title compound in 31% yield (18mg). NMR (400MHz) 0.65-0.85 (m. 12H), 0.95-1.2 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.4 (m, 2H), 1.4-1.5 (m, 2H), 1.55-1.7 (m, 2H), 2.0-2.2 (m, 1H), 2.1 (s, 3H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.3 (d, 1H), 4.6 (ABq, 2H), 5.65 (s, 1H), 6.6 (s, 1H), 7.05 (t, 1H), 7.2 (d, 2H), 7.25-7.4 (m, 6H), 7.5 (d, 2H); m/z: 739.

### Example 16

 $\frac{1,1-\text{Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-}(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-\text{carboxy-3-methylbutyl})\text{carbamoyl]}\text{benzyl}\text{carbamoylmethoxy})-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine}$ 

The title compound was synthesized by the procedure given in Example 15 starting from 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8- $[N-((R)-\alpha-carboxybenzyl)]$ 

carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 50mg, 0.078mmol) and *tert*-butyl (L)-leucinate (21mg, 0.095mmol). The DMF was removed and 20ml EtOAc was added and washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (5%, 10ml), 0.1M KHSO<sub>4</sub> (15ml) and brine before it was dried and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by flash chromatography as described. The intermediate *tert*-butyl ester of the title compound was confirmed; m/z: 826 (M+18 (NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>)). Hydrolysis and purification by preparative HPLC gave the title compound in 21% yield (12mg). NMR (400MHz) 0.7 (dd, 6H), 0.75-0.85 (m, 6H), 0.95-1.2 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.7 (m, 9H), 2.1 (s, 3H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.3-4.4 (m, 1H), 4.6 (ABq,

2H), 5.55 (s, 1H), 6.6 (s, 1H), 7.05 (t, 1H), 7.2 (d, 2H), 7.25-7.4 (m, 6H), 7.5 (d, 2H); m/z:

10 753.

5

20

25

30

# Example 17

# 15 benzothiadiazepine

The title compound was synthesized by the procedure given in Example 15 starting from 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 50mg, 0.078mmol) and *tert*-butyl (L)-*iso*-leucinate (21mg, 0.095mmol). The DMF was removed and 20ml EtOAc was added and washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (5%, 10ml), 0.1M KHSO<sub>4</sub> (15ml) and brine before it was dried and evaporated. No purification by flash chromatography was performed. The intermediate *tert*-butyl ester of the title compound was confirmed; m/z: 809. Hydrolysis and purification by preparative HPLC gave the title compound in 37% yield (22mg). NMR (400MHz) 0.65-1.4 (m, 22H), 1.4-1.5 (m, 2H), 1.5-1.7 (m, 2H), 1.75-1.85 (m, 1H), 2.1 (s, 3H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.25 (d, 1H), 4.6 (ABq, 2H), 5.6 (s, 1H), 6.6 (s, 1H), 7.05 (t, 1H), 7.2 (d, 2H), 7.25-7.4 (m, 6H), 7.45 (d, 2H); m/z: 753.

### Example 18

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxy-4-hydroxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-carboxymethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 3; 295mg, 0.58mmol) was dissolved in 10 ml DCM. 4-(1-

(R)-t-Butoxycarbonyl-1-aminomethyl)phenol (Method 7; 160mg, 0.72mmol), 2,6-lutidine (140μl, 1.20mmol) and TBTU (230mg, 0.72mmol) were added successively. The mixture was stirred for 3h. Additionally 4-(1-(R)-t-butoxycarbonyl-1-aminomethyl)phenol (10mg, 0.04mmol) was added and stirring was continued for 2h. DCM (20ml) was added and the solution was washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (5%, 20ml), KHSO<sub>4</sub> (0.3M; 20ml), brine (20ml) before it was dried and concentrated to a volume of 10 ml. The tert-butyl ester of the title compound was confirmed; m/z: 729 (M+18 (NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>)). TFA (1.3ml) was added and the mixture was stirred for 4.5h and concentrated. The crude product was purified by preparative HPLC using a C8 column (50x500mm) and a gradient (40/60 to 70/30 over 40 min) of MeCN/0.1M ammonium acetate buffer as eluent. Lyophilization yielded the title compound in 77.5% (302mg). NMR (400MHz) 0.8 (t, 6H), 1.0-1.2 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.4 (m, 2H), 1.4-1.5 (m, 2H), 1.55-1.7 (m, 2H), 2.1 (s, 3H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.6 (ABq, 2H), 5.3 (s, 1H), 6.6 (s, 1H), 6.75 (d, 2H), 7.05 (t, 1H) 7.15-7.4 (m, 7H); m/z: 673 (M+18 (NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>)).

### 15 Example 19

5

10

20

25

 $\frac{1,1-\text{Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-}(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-\text{carboxy-4-aminobutyl})\text{carbamoyl}]\text{benzyl}}{\text{carbamoylmethoxy}-2,3,4,5-\text{tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine}}$ 

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-{N-[(S)-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-4-(benzyloxycarbonylamino)butyl]carbamoyl} benzyl)carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 8; 0.006 mg) was dissolved in DCM (0.2 ml), TFA (1 ml) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. DCM and TFA were removed at reduced pressure and the residue was purified by preparative HPLC using MeCN/NH4<sup>+</sup> buffer 50/50 as eluent. The acetonitrile was evaporated and lyophilisation gave the title compound in 37% yield (21.9 mg). M/z: 754.4 and 752.4 (M-H)<sup>-</sup>.

5

10

15

20

30

 $\frac{1,1-\text{Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-}[N-((R)-\alpha-\{N-[(S)-1-\text{carboxy-4-}(benzyloxycarbonylamino)butyl]carbamoyl}{benzyl)carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine}$ 

PCT/GB02/04033

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-{N-[(S)-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-4-(benzyloxycarbonylamino)butyl]carbamoyl} benzyl)carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 8; 0.006 mg) was dissolved in DCM (0.1ml), TFA (0.15 ml) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. DCM and TFA were removed at reduced pressure and the residue was purified by preparative HPLC using MeCN/NH4<sup>+</sup> buffer 55/45 as eluent. The acetonitrile was evaporated and lyophilisation gave the title compound in 35% yield (2 mg). M/z: 888.7 and 886.7 (M-H).

### Example 21

 $\frac{1,1-\text{Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-}\{N-[(R)-\alpha-((S)-2-\text{carboxypyrrolidin-1-ylcarbonyl})\text{benzyl}\}\text{-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine}}$ 

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[(S)-2-(t-butoxycarbonyl) pyrrolidin-1-ylcarbonyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 10; 41 mg, 0.052 mmol) was dissolved in DCM: TFA 4:1 (3 ml) and stirred for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC using an acetonitrile/ammonium acetate buffer gradient (5/95 to 100/0) as eluent. 26.5 mg (70%) of the title compound was obtained after lyophilisation. M/z 737.3034.

### Example 22

25 <u>1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[N-(carboxymethyl)-N-methylcarbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine</u>

The title compound was synthesized from 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(t-butoxycarbonylmethyl)-N-methylcarbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 11) by the method of Example 21. NMR (500MHz, 2 rotamers 3:1 mixture):Major rotamer: 0.8 (brt, 6H), 1.0-1.24 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.4 (m, 2H), 1.4-1.51 (m, 2H), 1.56-1.68 (m, 2H), 2.09 (s, 3H), 3.0 (s, 3H) 3.75-4.21 (m, 4H), 4.60 (ABq, 2H), 6.01 (s, 1H), 6.58 (s, 1H), 7.05 (t, 1H), 7.16-7.28 (m, 3H),

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033 - 64 -

7.3-7.45 (m, 5H), 7.48 (brd, 2H) additional peaks from the minor rotamer at 2.14 (s), 3.0 (s), 4.56 (Abq), 5.81 (s), 6.61 (brs); m/z 711.4.

# Example 23

5 <u>1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[N-(1-(R)-2-(R)-1-carboxy-1-hydroxyprop-2-yl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine</u>

The title compound was synthesized from 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)- $\alpha$ -{N-[1-(R)-2-(R)-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-1-hydroxy-prop-2-yl]carbamoyl} benzyl)carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 12) by the method of Example 21. M/z 741.3.

### Example 24

10

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8- $(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-\{(sulphomethyl)carbamoyl]\})$ benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine ammonium salt 15 1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-(( $\mathbb{R}$ )- $\alpha$ -carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 50 mg, 0.078 mmol), aminomethanesulfonic acid (15 mg, 0.088 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (17.2µl, 0.156 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (2ml). Tetrabutylammoniumhydrogensulfate (35 mg,0.103 mmol) was added and the mixture was heated for 15 minutes at 60°C. After 20 removing heating TBTU (45 mg, 0.14 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred in room temperature 40 minutes then 60°C for one hour. After being stirred overnight 35 mg TBTU was added. After 6 hours 29 mg TBTU in small portions was added and the reaction mixture was stirred overnight. The mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The product was purified using preparative HPLC using an acetonitrile/ammonium acetate buffer 25 gradient (5/95 to 100/0) as eluent. To give 10 mg (17%) of the title compound as a ammonium salt. NMR (600MHz) 0.77 (brt, 6H), 0.97-1.22 (m, 6H), 1.24-1.48 (m, 4H), 1.51-1.68 (m, 2H), 2.08 (s, 3H), 3.7-4.18 (m, 2H), 4.24 (d, 1H), 4.39 (d, 1H), 4.62 (ABq, 2H), 5.62 (s, 1H), 6.58 (brs, 1H), 7.02 (brt, 1H), 7.14-7.23 (m, 2H), 7.24-7.36 (m, 6H), 7.45 (d, 2H); m/z 732.9.

5

10

15

20

25

30

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-{*N*-[(R)-α-(*t*-butoxycarbonyl)benzyl] carbamoylmethoxy}-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 9; 762 mg, 1.09 mmol) was dissolved in a mixture of TFA (6.65 ml) and triethylsilane (0.350 ml). The reaction mixture was stirred for one hour and then evaporated under reduced pressure to give the title compound in a quantitative yield (714 mg). NMR (500MHz): 0.8 (brt, 6H), 0.96-1.25 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.4 (m, 2H), 1.42-1.51 (m, 2H), 1.57-1.69 (m, 2H), 2.11 (s, 3H), 3.8-4.15 (m, 2H), 4.66 (ABq, 2H), 5.49-5.53 (m, 1H), 6.61 (s, 1H), 7.06 (t, 1H), 7.18-7.26 (m, 2H), 7.28-7.45 (m, 8H), 8.35 (d, NH); m/z 640.2.

# Example 26

 $1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-}\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine$ 

1.1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8- $[N-((R)-\alpha-carboxy-4-hydroxybenzyl)]$ carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 18; 100mg, 0.152mmol) was dissolved in 3ml DMF. o-tert-Butyl-(L)-threonine tert-butyl ester (50mg, 0.216mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (34µl, 0.309mmol) were added and the mixture was stirred for 5min. TBTU (60mg, 0.187mmol) was added and the solution was stirred for 30 min. Formic acid (1-2 drops) was added and the mixture was extracted between EtOAc and water. The aqueous phase was washed with EtOAc and the combined organic phases were washed with 2%NaHCO3, brine, dried and concentrated. The intermediate t-butyl ester of the title compound was confirmed; m/z: 869. DCM (3ml) and TFA (0.5ml) were added and the solution was stirred overnight. The mixture was concentrated and purified by preparative HPLC on a C8 column (50x250mm). A gradient (20/80 to 50/50) of MeCN/0.1M ammonium acetate buffer was used as eluent. Lyophilization gave the title compound in 61% yield (71mg), NMR (400MHz) 0.78 (t, 6H), 0.93 (d, 3H), 1.0-1.22 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.4 (m, 2H), 1.4-1.52 (m, 2H), 1.55-1.7 (m, 2H), 2.1 (s, 3H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.18-4.25 (m, 1H), 4.35 (d, 1H), 4.63 (ABq, 2H), 5.53 (s, 1H), 6.57 (s, 1H), 6.75 (d, 2H), 7.03 (t, 1H), 7.2 (d, 2H), 7.23-7.37 (m, 5H); m/z: 757.

 $\frac{1,1-\text{Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-}(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-\text{carboxy-2-methylpropyl})\text{carbamoyl}-4-\text{hydroxybenzyl}\}\text{carbamoylmethoxy}-2,3,4,5-\text{tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine}}$ 

The title compound was synthesized by the procedure described in Example 26 starting from 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxy-4-hydroxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 18; 70mg, 0.108mmol) and *tert*-butyl (L)-valinate (31mg, 0.148mmol). The intermediate *tert*-butyl ester of the title compound was confirmed. M/z: 811. Hydrolysis and purification by preparative HPLC yielded the title compound in 56 mg (69% yield). NMR (400MHz) 0.7-0.75 (m, 16H), 0.79 (t, 6H), 0.96-1.24 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.4 (m, 2H), 1.4-1.5 (m, 2H), 1.54-1.7 (m, 2H), 2.0-2.2 (m, 1H), 2.1 (s, 3H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.22 (d, 1H), 4.6 (ABq, 2H), 5.54 (s, 1H), 6.58 (s, 1H), 6.75 (d, 2H), 7.03 (t, 1H), 7.2 (d, 2H), 7.23-7.37 (m, 5H); m/z: 755.

15

10

5

### Example 28

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[N-((S)-1-carboxybutyl) carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

20

The title compound was synthesized by the procedure described in Example 26 starting from 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxy-4-hydroxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 18; 36mg, 0.054mmol) and *tert*-butyl (L)-norvalinate hydrochloride (16mg, 0.076mmol). The intermediate *tert*-butyl ester of the title compound was confirmed. M/z: 811. Hydrolysis and purification by preparative HPLC yielded the title compound in 23 mg (56% yield). NMR (400MHz) 0.7-0.85 (m, 9H), 0.97-1.22 (m, 8H), 1.25-1.4 (m, 2H), 1.4-1.5 (m, 2H), 1.5-1.8 (m, 4H), 2.1 (s, 3H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.27 (dd, 1H), 4.6 (ABq, 2H), 5.45 (s, 1H), 6.58 (s, 1H), 6.75 (d, 2H), 7.03 (t, 1H), 7.19 (d, 2H), 7.23-7.37 (m, 5H); m/z: 755.

5

10

15

20

25

30

 $1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-}\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxypropyl)]}$  carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

A solution of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-\(\alpha\)-carboxy-4-hydroxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 18; 0.075 g, 0.114 mmol), butanoic acid, 2-amino-, 1,1-dimethylethyl ester, hydrochloride, (2S)-(0.031 g, 0.160 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (0.050 ml, 0.457 mmol) in DMF (4 ml) was stirred at RT for 10 min, after which TBTU (0.048 g, 0.149 mmol) was added. After 1h, the conversion to the ester was complete. M/z: 797.4. The solution was diluted with toluene and then concentrated. The residue was dissolved in a mixture of DCM (5 ml) and TFA (2 ml) and the mixture was stirred for 7h. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC using a gradient of 20-60% MeCN in 0.1M ammonium acetate buffer as eluent. The title compound was obtained in 0.056 g (66 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): 0.70 (3H, t), 0.70-0.80 (6H, m), 0.85-1.75 (14H, m), 2.10 (3H, s), 3.80 (2H, brs), 4.00-4.15 (1H, m), 4.65 (1H, d(AB)), 4.70 (1H, d(AB)), 5.50 (1H, d), 6.60 (1H, s), 6.65-7.40 (11H, m), 8.35 (1H, d), 8.50 (1H, d) 9.40 (1H, brs).

### Example 30

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[N-((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthio-ethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

A solution of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxy-4-hydroxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 18, 0.075 g, 0.114 mmol), S-methyl-L-cysteine tert-butyl ester (Pestic. Sci.; EN; 45; 4; 1995; 357-362; 0.031 g, 0.160 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (0.050 ml, 0.457 mmol) in DMF (4 ml) was stirred at RT for 10 min, after which TBTU (0.048 g, 0.149 mmol) was added. After 1h, the conversion to the ester was complete. M/z: 829.5. The reaction mixture was diluted with formic acid (15 ml) and stirred at 50 °C for 17h. The solution was diluted with toluene and then concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC using a gradient of 20-60% MeCN in 0.1M ammonium acetate buffer as eluent. The title compound was obtained in 0.070 g (79 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): 0.605-0.80 (6H, m), 0.80-1.60

PCT/GB02/04033

(12H, m), 1.85 (3H, s), 2.10 (3H, s), 2.60-2.80 (2H, m), 3.85 (2H, brs), 4.15-4.30 (1H, m), 4.65 (1H, d(AB)), 4.70 (1H, d(AB)), 5.50 (1H, d), 6.60 (1H, s), 6.60-7.35 (11H, m), 8.30 (1H, d), 8.40 (1H, d), 9.40 (1H, brs).

#### 5 Example 31

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methyl-8- $(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]$ benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

A solution of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methyl-8-carboxymethoxy-2,3,4,5tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 5; 0.050 g, 0.105 mmol), (R)-α-[N-(tbutoxycarbonylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzylamine (Method 86 of WO 02/50051; 0.039 g, 0.148 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (0.046 ml, 0.417 mmol) in DCM (4 ml) was stirred at RT for 20 min, after which TBTU (0.044 g, 0.137 mmol) was added. After 1h, the conversion to the ester (m/z: 721.2 (M+1)<sup>+</sup>) was completed. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was dissolved in formic acid (5 ml). The solution was stirred for 17 hours and then concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC using a gradient of 40-60% MeCN in 0.1M ammonium acetate buffer as eluent. The title compound was obtained in 0.044 g (63 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): 0.65-0.80 (6H, m), 0.85-1.60 (12H, m), 2.10 (3H, s), 3.40-3.65 (2H, m), 3.70 (2H, bs), 4.60 (1H, d(AB)), 4.70 (1H, d(AB)), 5.55 (1H, d), 6.70 (1H, s), 6.80-7.50 (12H, m), 8.20-8.30 (1H, m), 8.55 (1H, d).

20

25

30

10

15

# Example 32

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methyl-8- $(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxypropyl)carbamoyl]-$ 4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

A solution of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methyl-8-carboxymethoxy-2,3,4,5tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 16; 0.050 g, 0.105 mmol), (R)- $\alpha$ -{N-[(S)-1-(t-1)] butoxycarbonyl)propyl]carbamoyl}-4-hydroxybenzylamine (Method 19; 0.045 g, 0.146 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (0.047 ml, 0.427 mmol) in DCM (4 ml) was stirred at RT for 15 min, after which TBTU (0.044 g, 0.137 mmol) was added. After 17 h, the conversion to the ester (m/z: 765.7 (M+1)<sup>+</sup>) was completed. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was dissolved in formic acid (5 ml). The solution was stirred for 3 days and then concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC using a gradient of 40-60% MeCN in 0.1M ammonium acetate buffer as eluent. The title compound was obtained in 0.017 g (23 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz, DMSO) 0.60 (3H, t), 0.65-0.80 (6H, m), 0.85-1.75 (14H, m), 2.10 (3H, s), 3.75 (2H, bs), 3.90-4.05 (1H, m), 4.60 (1H, d(AB)), 4.65 (1H, d(AB)), 5.50 (1H, d), 6.65-7.30 (11H, m), 8.15 (1H, d), 8.40 (1H, d).

### 5 Example 33

10

15

25

30

 $\frac{1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-\{(S)-1-[N-((S)-2-hydroxy-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]propyl\}carbamoyl]benzyl\}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine}$ 

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(*N*-{(R)-α-[*N*-((S)-1-{*N*-[(S)-2-(*t*-butoxy)-1-(*t*-butoxycarbonyl)ethyl]carbamoyl}propyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 20; 14 mg, 0.015 mmol) was dissolved in a mixture of DCM:TFA (3:1, 4 ml). The reaction mixture was stirred for 3.5 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The product was purified by preparative HPLC using a MeCN/0.1 M ammonium acetate buffer gradient (5/95 to 100/0) as eluent to give the title compound, 8 mg (65%). NMR (400 MHz): 0.7-0.83 (m, 9H), 0.9-1.40 (m, 8H), 1.40-1.52 (m, 2H), 1.52-1.70 (m, 3H), 1.77-1.88 (m, 1H), 2.11 (s, 3H), 3.8-4.1 (m, 4H), 4.29 (dd, 1H), 4.37 (t, 1H), 4.63 (ABq, 2H), 5.57 (s, 1H), 6.60 (s, 1H), 7.04 (brt, 1H), 7.20 (brd, 2H), 7.25-7.40 (m, 6H), 7.47 (d, 2H); m/z 812.3.

### 20 Example 34

 $\frac{1,1-\text{Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[2-(S)-2-(carboxy)-4-(R)-4-(hydroxy)pyrrolidin-1-ylcarbonyl]benzyl\}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine}$ 

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[2-(S)-2-(methoxycarbonyl)-4-(R)-4-(hydroxy)pyrrolidin-1-ylcarbonyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 21; 23 mg, 0.030 mmol) was dissolved in THF:H<sub>2</sub>O (1:1, 1ml). Lithium hydroxide (monohydrate, 2 mg, 0.048 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours. 50% Starting material remained so additional lithium hydroxide (3 mg) was added and left for an hour. The reaction was still not complete so further lithium hydroxide (2 mg) was added and the reaction was stirred overnight. The product was purified by preparative HPLC using a MeCN/0.1 M ammonium acetate buffer gradient (5/95 to 100/0) as eluent to give the title compound, 12 mg (53%). M/z 753.04.

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033 - 70 -

# Example 35

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[2-(S)-2-(carboxy)azetidin-1ylcarbonyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8- $(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[2-(S)-2-(t-butoxycarbonyl)$ azetidin-1-ylcarbonyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-5 benzothiadiazepine (Method 22; 27.5 mg, 0.035 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (3 ml) and TFA (1ml) was added. The reaction was stirred for 1.5 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The product was lyophilised to give 25 mg of the title compound. M/z 722.92.

10

15

20

# Example 36

carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]ethyl}carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

butoxycarbonyl)ethyl]carbamoyl}ethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 26; 34 mg, 0.041 mmol) was dissolved in a mixture of DCM:TFA (3:1, 4 ml). The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The product was purified by preparative HPLC using a MeCN/0.1 M ammonium acetate buffer gradient (5/95 to 100/0) as eluent to give the title compound, 23 mg (72%). NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) 0.81 (bt, 6H), 0.88-1.54 (m, 16H), 1.56-1.71 (m, 2H), 2.11 (s, 3H), 3.8-4.2 (m, 2H), 4.33-4.42 (m, 2H), 4.66 (ABq, 2H), 5.55 (s, 1H), 6.61 (s, 1H), 7.07 (t, 1H), 7.22 (brd, 2H), 7.28-7.43 (m, 6H), 7.48 (d, 2H); m/z 782.1.

#### Example 37 25

1.1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8- $(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((R)-1-carboxy-3,3-k-1)])$ dimethylbutyl) carbamoyl]benzyl]carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5benzothiadiazepine; and

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8- $(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-3,3-(S)-1])\}$ dimethylbutyl) carbamoyl]benzyl]carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-30 benzothiadiazepine

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)- $\alpha$ -carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 51mg, 0.080mmol) was dissolved in 2ml DMF. t-Butyl 4-methyl D,L-leucinate (Method 27; 23mg, 0.114mmol), N-methylmorpholine (18µl, 0.163 mmol) and TBTU (31mg, 0.097mmol) were added successively and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours. One drop of formic acid was added and the mixture was extracted between EtOAc and water. The aqueous phase (pH=3) was washed with EtOAc. The combined organic layers were washed with 5%NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine and was then dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated to dryness. The intermediate t-butyl ester of the title compound was confirmed. M/z: 823. DCM (2ml) and TFA (0.5ml) were added and the solution was stirred overnight. The mixture was concentrated and purified using preparative HPLC on a C8 column (50x250mm). A step gradient of MeCN (20-50%) in 0.1M ammonium acetate buffer was used as eluent. The two diastereomers separated under these conditions and they were collected and lyophilized separately. The first eluting diastereomer was obtained in 5mg (16% yield) and the second eluting diastercomer was obtained in 3mg (10% yield). The absolute configuration was assigned by comparison of NMR-spectra with related compounds and the first eluting diastereomer was found to be the (R,R)-diastereomer and the second eluting diastereomer was the (R,S)-diastereomer. M/z: 767. NMR of the (R,R)diastereomer (400MHz): 0.79 (t, 6H), 0.95 (s, 9H), 0.99-1.22 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.39 (m, 2H), 1.40-1.51 (m, 2H), 1.57-1.68 (m, 3H), 1.80 (dd, 1H), 2.08 (s, 3H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.47 (dd, 1H), 4.63 (Abq, 2H), 5.61 (s, 1H), 6.58 (s, 1H), 7.04 (t, 1H), 7.20 (d, 2H), 7.25-7.35 (m, 6H), 7.43-7.47 (m, 2H). And NMR of the (R,S)-diastereomer (400MHz): 0.7 (s, 9H), 0.79 (t, 6H), 0.99-1.22 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.39 (m, 2H), 1.40-1.51 (m, 3H), 1.55-1.70 (m, 2H), 1.76 (dd, 1H), 2.12 (s, 3H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.35 (dd, 1H), 4.60 (Abq, 2H), 5.54 (s, 1H), 6.60 (s, 1H), 7.04 (t, 1H), 7.20 (d, 2H), 7.24-7.37 (m, 6H), 7.39-7.46 (m, 2H).

25

30

5

10

15

20

### Example 38

1.1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[N-((R)-1-carboxy-3,3-dimethylbutyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

The title compound was prepared by the procedure of Example 37 starting from 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)- $\alpha$ -carboxy-4-hydroxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 18; 53mg,

0.081mmol). The intermediate t-butyl ester was confirmed. M/z: 839. Only one of the diastereomers were collected from the preparative HPLC purification of the racemic title compound. It was obtained in 4mg (12%) and was assigned to be the (R,R)-diastereomer from comparison of NMR-data of related compounds. M/z: 783. NMR (400MHz): 0.79 (t, 6H), 0.95 (s, 9H), 0.99-1.22 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.39 (m, 2H), 1.40-1.51 (m, 2H), 1.56-1.68 (m, 3H), 1.79 (dd, 1H), 2.08 (s, 3H), 3.96 (brs, 2H), 4.47 (dd, 1H), 4.62 (Abq, 2H), 5.47 (s, 1H), 6.58 (s, 1H), 6.73 (d, 2H), 7.04 (t, 1H), 7.19 (d, 2H), 7.24-7.35 (m, 5H).

### Example 39

1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

5

15

20

25

30

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)- $\alpha$ -carboxy-4-hydroxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 18; 55mg, 0.084mmol) and methyl 3-(trimethylsilyl)alaninate (Method 28; 19mg, 0.108mmol) were dissolved in 3.5ml DMF. N-Methyl morpholine (18µl, 0.163mmol) and TBTU (32mg, 0.101mmol) were added successively and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours. One drop of formic acid was added and the mixture was then extracted between EtOAc and water. The aqueous phase (pH=3) was washed with EtOAc. The combined organic phases were washed with 1% NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and was then dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated. The intermediate methyl ester was confirmed. M/z: 813. THF (2ml), water (2ml) and LiOH (10mg, 0.418mmol) were added and the mixture was stirred over night. The mixture was purified using preparative HPLC on a C8 column (50x100mm). A gradient from 20 to 50% MeCN in 0.1M ammonium acetate buffer was used as eluent. The two diastereomers were separated under these conditions and were collected separately. Lyophilisation yielded 8mg (24% yield) of the first eluting diastereomer and 8.4mg (25% yield) of the second. The absolute configurations were assigned from comparison with NMR-data of related compounds and the first eluting diastereomer was found to be the (R,R)-diastereomer and the second eluting diastereomer was the (R,S)-diastereomer. M/z: 799. NMR of the (R,R)-diastereomer (400MHz): -0.16 (s, 9H),

0.79 (t, 6H), 0.9-1.22 (m, 8H), 1.25-1.40 (m, 2H), 1.40-1.52 (m, 2H), 1.55-1.68 (m, 2H), 2.11 (s, 3H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.29-4.35 (m, 1H), 4.58 (Abq, 2H), 5.45 (s, 1H), 6.59 (s, 1H), 6.73 (d, 2H), 7.04 (t, 1H), 7.17-7.27 (m, 5H), 7.32 (t, 2H); and of the (R,S)-diastereomer (400MHz): 0.04 (s, 9H), 0.79 (t, 6H), 1.00-1.22 (m, 8H), 1.25-1.40 (m, 2H), 1.40-1.52 (m, 2H), 1.55-1.68 (m, 2H), 2.08 (s,3H), 3.95 (brs, 2H), 4.40-4.46 (m, 1H), 4.62 (Abq, 2H), 5.49 (s, 1H), 6.58 (s, 1H), 6.73 (d, 2H), 7.04 (t, 1H), 7.14-7.36 (m, 7H).

# Preparation of Starting Materials

The starting materials for the Examples above are either commercially available or are readily prepared by standard Methods from known materials. For Example, the following reactions are an illustration, but not a limitation, of some of the starting materials used in the above reactions.

### Method 1

5

10

15

20

25

30

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-bromo-8-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine and

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

To a suspension of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-bromo-8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (prepared according to WO 98/38182; 0.218 g, 5.65\*10<sup>-4</sup> mol) in DMF (5 ml) was added NaSMe (0.210 g, 2.83 mmol, 95 %), and the mixture was stirred for 5 hours at 120°C. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was partitioned between EtOAc and 0.5 M HCl. The aqueous layer was extracted twice more with EtOAc and the combined organic extracts were dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated. The residue was dissolved in MeCN (7 ml) and ethyl bromoacetate (0.063 ml, 5.65\*10<sup>-4</sup> mol), tetrabutylammonium bromide (0.018 g, 5.65\*10<sup>-5</sup> mol) and sodium carbonate (0.250 g, 2.36 mmol) were added. The mixture was stirred over night at 80°C. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was partitioned between EtOAc and 0.5 M HCl. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated. Flash chromatography on silica gel (Hex:EtOAc-6:1) gave the title compounds as colourless oils:

1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-bromo-8-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine, 0.187 g (58 %). NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.70-0.80 (m, 6H), 0.90-1.70 (m, 15H), 3.90 (brs, 2H), 4.25 (q, 2H), 4,35 (brs, 1H), 4.65 (s, 2H), 6.95-7.40 (m, 7H); and 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine, 0.024 g (8 %). NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.70-0.85 (m, 6H), 0.90-1.70 (m, 15H), 2.10 (s, 3H), 3.90 (brs, 2H), 4,20 (brs, 1H), 4.25 (q, 2H), 4.65 (s, 2H), 6.55 (s, 1H), 6.95-7.35 (m, 6H).

## Method 2

10

15

20

25

30

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-bromo-8-carboxymethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

To a solution of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-bromo-8-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 1; 0.184 g, 3.24\*10<sup>-4</sup> mol) in EtOH (7 ml) was added NaOH (0.052 g, 1.30 mmol) and the mixture was stirred overnight. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was partitioned between EtOAc and 0.5 M HCl. The aqueous layer was extracted twice more with EtOAc and the combined organic extracts were washed with brine and concentrated. The crude product was purified by preparative HPLC using an MeCN / ammonium acetate buffer as eluent and freeze-dried to give the title compound in 0.173 g (99 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) 0.70-0.85 (m, 6H), 0.95-1.70 (m, 12H), 3.90 (brs, 2H), 4.50 (s, 2H), 6.90-7.40 (m, 7H).

### Method 3

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-carboxymethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

To a solution of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-ethoxycarbonyl-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 1; 0.024 g, 4.49\*10<sup>-5</sup> mol) in EtOH (3 ml) was added NaOH (0.007 g, 1.80\*10<sup>-4</sup> mol) and the mixture was stirred over night. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by preparative HPLC using an MeCN / ammonium acetate buffer as eluent and freeze-dried. The title compound was obtained in 0.021 g (92 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) 0.70-0.85 (m, 6H), 1.00-1.70 (m, 12H), 2.10 (s, 3H), 3.90 (brs, 2H), 4.55 (s, 2H), 6.60 (s, 1H), 6.90-7.35 (m, 6H).

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

# Method 3

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-carboxymethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (alternative preparation)

1,1-Dioxo-2-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(*t*-butoxycarbonylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 25; 6.902 g, 10.11 mmol) was dissolved in a mixture of TFA (50 ml) and Et<sub>3</sub>Si (8 ml) and the solution was stirred for 90 min at RT. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was dissolved in *t*-BuOMe (100 ml). The organic phase was washed with water (20 ml) and then extracted three times with diluted NaOH (2x50 ml 0.5M). The combined aqueous extracts were acidified with diluted HCl (70 ml, 1M) (pH 1-2) and were then extracted twice with *t*-BuOMe (2x50 ml). The ether layer was washed with brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated. 4.694 g (92 %) of the desire product as brown oil were obtained. NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD): 0.70-0.85 (m, 6H), 1.00-1.25 (m, 6H), 1.25-1.50 (m, 4H), 1.55-1.70 (m, 2H), 2.10 (s, 3H), 3.90 (brs, 2H), 4.55 (s, 2H), 6.60 (s, 1H), 6.95-7.35 (m, 6H).

15

20

25

30

5

10

# Method 4

(R)-N-Benzyloxycarbonyl-α-[N-(t-butoxycarbonylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzylamine

(2R)-{[(Benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino} (phenyl)acetic acid (10 g, 35.0 mmol) and t-butylglycine hydrochloride (6.3 g, 37.4 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (200 ml) with 2,6-lutidine (8.2 ml, 70.4 mmol). After stirring 5 min at 0°C TBTU (12.4 g, 38.6 mmol) was added and stirring was continued for 1.5 hours at 0°C and 3.75 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed with water (2 x 100 ml), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and purified with flash chromatography (DCM:EtOAc 7:1→5:1) to give the title compound (13 g, 94 %). NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>): 1.45 (s, 9H), 3.84 (d, 1H), 4.00 (dd, 1H), 5.10 (m, 2H), 5.28 (brs, 1H), 6.13 (brs, 1H), 6.23 (brs, 1H), 7.30-7.44 (m, 10H).

#### Method 5

(R)-α-[N-(t-Butoxycarbonylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzylamine

(R)-N-Benzyloxycarbonyl-α-[N-(t-butoxycarbonylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzylamine (Method 4; 12.8 g, 32.2 mmol) was dissolved in EtOH (99%, 200 ml) and toluene (50 ml). Pd/C (10%, 0.65 g) was added and hydrogenation was performed at atmospheric pressure for 5.5 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was filtered through diatomaceous earth

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033 - 76 -

and the solvents were evaporated to give the title compound (8.4 g, 99 %). NMR (600 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>): 1.45 (s, 9H), 3.93 (m, 2H), 4.54 (s, 1H), 7.31-7.42 (m, 5H), 7.51 (brs, 1H).

# Method 6

# 2-{[(2R)-2-Amino-2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)ethanoyl]amino}ethanesulphonic acid

N-Boc-(D)-4-hydroxyphenylglycine (1.00 g, 3.21 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (5 ml) and tetrabutylammonium taurine (2.36 g, 6.42 mmol) was added together with additionally 5 ml DMF. The resulting suspension was cooled on ice and TBTU (1.24 g, 3.85 mmol) was added. The ice bath was removed after 30 min and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours before it was filtered and concentrated. TFA in DCM (20%, 20ml) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred over night. Ethanol (20 ml) was added and the solvents evaporated. The crude product was refluxed in ethanol (100 ml) for 1 hour. Filtration yielded the pure title compound as a white solid, 626mg (71%). NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): 2.4-2.6 (m, 2H), 3.2-3.4 (m, 2H), 4.79 (s, 1H), 6.78 (d, 2H), 7.23 (d, 2H), 8.22 (t, 1H), 8.4 (brs, 3H), 9.7 (s, 1H).

15

20

10

5

#### Method 7

### 4-(1-(R)-t-Butoxycarbonyl-1-aminomethyl)phenol

Sulfuric acid (conc, 1ml) was added to a solution of D-(R)-4-hydroxyphenylglycine (1.0g, 6.0mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (8ml) placed in a Teflon® flask. The flask was cooled to -78°C and isobutylene (8g, 142.6mmol, condensed at -78°C) was added. The flask was placed in an autoclave at room temperature and stirred for 15h. The autoclave was cooled on ice before opened. The excess isobutylene was allowed to evaporate and the remaining solution was poured into aqueous NaOH (2M, 20ml) and was extracted with diethyl ether to remove formed by-product. The aqueous phase was slightly acidified to attain pH=10 using 2M HCl and was extracted with diethyl ether (3x75ml). The organic phase was washed with brine, dried and concentrated. The obtained product was recrystallized in diethyl ether/hexane. Mass: 0.55g (41%). NMR (600MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.45 (s, 9H), 4.45 (s, 1H), 6.8 (d, 2H), 7.25 (d, 2H); m/z: 224.

25

# Method 8

5

10

15

20

 $1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-<math>\alpha$ -{N-[(S)-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-4-(benzyloxycarbonylamino)butyl]carbamoyl}benzyl)carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)- $\alpha$ -carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 53 mg, 0.083 mmol), tert-butyl  $N^5$ -[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]-L-ornithinate (35 mg, 0.098 mmol), N-methyl morpholine (0.027 m) were dissolved in DCM (5 ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 min, where after TBTU (32 mg, 0,10 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 1.5 hours. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by chromatography using DCM:EtOAc, 5:1 as eluent to give the title compound 57 mg (72%). M/z= 944.7 and 942.7 (M-H).

## Method 9

 $1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-{N-[(R)-<math>\alpha$ -(t-butoxycarbonyl)benzyl]} carbamoylmethoxy}-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-carboxymethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 3; 627 mg, 1.24 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (25 ml), tert-butyl (2R)-amino(phenyl)acetate (308 mg, 1.48 mmol), 2,6-dimethylpyridine (288 μl, 2.47 mmol) and TBTU (477 mg, 1.48 mmol) were added. The mixture was stirred for 3.5 hours. The reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The product was purified using an Isolute column (10g, silica). The product was eluted with a stepwise gradient using DCM:EtOAc 100:0 then 95:5. Approximately 694mg pure compound was collected. Another fraction was purified a second time using an Isolute column (10g, silica). The product was eluted with a stepwise gradient using DCM:EtOAc 100:0,95:5 then 90:10. The pure fraction was added to the first fraction yielding 787 mg (91%) of the title compound. NMR (400MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.78 (t, 6H), 0.92-1.12 (m, 4H), 1.12-1.46 (m, 6H), 1.54 (s, 9H), 1.58-1.72 (m, 2H), 2.14 (s, 3H), 3.8-4.05 (m, 2H), 4.32 (brs, NH), 4.56 (ABq, 2H), 5.56 (d, 1H), 6.56 (s, 1H), 7.04 (t, 1H), 7.10 (brd, 2H) 7.24-7.42 (m, 8H), 7.84 (d, NH); m/z 694.7 (M-H).

25

# Method 10

5

10

20

25

30

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[(S)-2-(t-butoxycarbonyl) pyrrolidin-1-ylcarbonyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 50 mg, 0.078 mmol) and *tert*-butyl L-prolinate (15 mg, 0.088 mmol) were dissolved in DCM (2ml) and N-methylmorpholine (17.2μl, 0.156 mmol) and TBTU (45 mg, 0.14 mmol) were added. The reaction mixture was stirred for 3 hours then additional *tert*-butyl L-prolinate (15 mg, 0.088 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred over night. The reaction mixture was put directly on an Isolute column (2g, silica). The product was eluted with a stepwise gradient using DCM:EtOAc 100:0, 95:5, 90:10 then 80:20 to give the title compound (41 mg, 66%). M/z 793.2.

### 15 Method 11

 $1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-}\alpha-[N-(t-butoxycarbonylmethyl)-N-methylcarbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine$ 

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 50 mg, 0.078 mmol) and *tert*-butyl N-methylglycinate (15 mg, 0.10 mmol) were dissolved in DCM (2ml) and N-methylmorpholine (17.2μl, 0.156 mmol) and TBTU (45 mg, 0.14 mmol) were added. The reaction mixture was stirred for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was put directly on an Isolute column (2g, silica). The product was eluted with a stepwise gradient using DCM:EtOAc 100:0, 95:5, 90:10 then 80:20 to give the title compound (30 mg, 50%). M/z 767.4.

# Method 12

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-\alpha-{N-[1-(R)-2-(R)-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-1-hydroxy-prop-2-yl]carbamoyl} benzyl)carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 50 mg, 0.078

mmol) and tert-butyl (2R,3R)-3-amino-2-hydroxybutanoate (15 mg, 0.086 mmol) were dissolved in DCM (2ml) and DMF (1ml) and N-methylmorpholine (17.2µl, 0.156 mmol) and TBTU (45 mg, 0.14 mmol) were added. The reaction mixture was stirred for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was put directly on an Isolute column (2g, silica). The product was eluted with a stepwise gradient using DCM:EtOAc 100:0, 95:5, 90:10 then 80:20 to give the title compound (33 mg, 53%). M/z 797.3.

#### Method 13

5

10

15

20

25

30

t-Butyl N-((2R)-2-{[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino}-2-phenylethanoyl)-o-(t-butyl)-L-serinate (2R)-{[(Benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino}(phenyl)acetic acid (2.0 g, 7.0 mmol) and t-butyl O-(t-butyl)-L-serinate (2.0 g, 7.9 mmol) and 2.6-lutidine were dissolved in DCM (30 ml). After stirring 5 min at 0°C TBTU (2.5 g, 7.8 mmol) was added and stirring was continued 30 min at 0°C and 4 h. at room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed with water (2 x 100 ml), dried and purified with flash chromatography (DCM) to give the title compound (3.3g, 97 %). NMR (300 MHz): 1.05 (s, 9H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 3.4-3.8 (m, 2H), 4.5 (brs, 1H), 4.85(s, 2H), 5.1 (s, 2H), 5.4 (s, 1H), 7.25-7.5 (m, 10 H).

### Method 14

# t-Butyl N-[(2R)-2-amino-2-phenylethanoyl]-o-(t-butyl)-L-serinate

t-Butyl N-((2R)-2-{[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino}-2-phenylethanoyl)-o-(t-butyl)-L-serinate (Method 13; 3.3 g, 6.8 mmol) was dissolved in EtOH (95%, 30 ml) and a catalytic amount of Pd/C (5%)(50% in water) was added and hydrogenation was performed at atmospheric pressure for 3 h. at room temperature. The reaction mixture was filtered through diatomaceous earth and the solvent was evaporated to give the title compound (2.35 g, 98 %). NMR (500 MHz): 1.1 (s, 9H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 3.45-3.8 (m, 2H), 4.5 (t, 1H), 4.55 (s, 1H), 4.85 (s, 2H), 7.3-7.5 (m, 5H).

#### Method 15

1,1-Dioxo-2-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methyl-8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

To a cooled solution (-78 °C) of 1,1-dioxo-2-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-bromo-8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 23; 2.10 g, 3.41

- 80 -

PCT/GB02/04033

mmol) in THF (50 ml) was added dropwise a solution of n-BuLi (2.35 ml, 3.75 mmol, 1.6 M in hexane). After stirring at -78 °C for 20 minutes, MeI (2.42 g, 17.1 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred at -78 °C for 10 minutes and at room temperature for 18 hours. Diethyl ether (50 ml) was added and the organic phase was washed with 10 % NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (aq, 50 ml) and brine (50 ml). After drying, filtration and concentration the crude product was subjected to flash chromatography (Hexane: EtOAc -95:5) to give 0.4 gram (21 %) of the title product as colourless oil. NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>): 0.60-0.70 (m, 6H), 0.70-0.90 (m, 4H), 0.90-1.35 (m, 8H), 2.00 (s, 3H), 3.70 (s, 3H), 3.80 (s, 3H), 4.00-4.20 (m, 2H), 4.35-4.60 (m, 2H), 6.65-6.85 (m, 3H), 6.90-7.10 (m, 3H), 7.15-7.30 (m, 5H).

10

15

20

25

30

# Method 16

# 1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methyl-8-carboxymethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5benzothiadiazepine

To a solution (0 °C) of trifluoroacetic acid (30 ml) and triethylsilane (1.03 g, 8.85 mmol) was added a solution of 1,1-dioxo-2-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7methyl-8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 15; 0.92 g, 1.77 mmol) in DCM (2 ml). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. After concentration of the reaction mixture, the residue was dissolved in diethyl ether (50 ml) and washed with water (25 ml) and sodium bicarbonate (10 %, 25 ml). After drying, filtration and concentration the crude product was subjected to flash chromatography on silica gel (Hexane: EtOAc -90:10) to give 0.58 g of a grey solid. To a solution (0 °C) of this solid in dichloromethane (30 ml) was added dropwise BBr<sub>3</sub> in DCM (1M in DCM, 10.2 ml, 10.2 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 45 minutes and then it was washed with sodium bicarbonate (10 %, 25 ml) and water (25 ml). After drying, filtration and concentration the crude product (0.55g, grey solid) was dissolved in MeCN (30 ml). The solution was added K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.22g, 1.58 mmol) and tetra-n-butyl ammonium bromide (10 mg) followed by ethyl bromoacetate (0.25 g, 1.51 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 80 °C for 1.5 h and then evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in EtOAc (50 ml) and washed with NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (aq, 10 %) and brine. After drying, filtration and concentration the crude product was subjected to flash chromatography (Hex: EtOAc 9:1-8:2) to afford 0.58 g of an off-white solid. The solid was dissolved in THF: H<sub>2</sub>O (4:1, 25ml) and LiOH (0.097 g, 2.31 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 40 min. The mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure, dissolved in water (50 ml)

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033 - 81 -

and acidified with 1M HCl. The aqueous layer was extracted 2x with diethyl ether. Evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure gave 0.46 g (55%) of the title compound. NMR (300 MHz, acetone-d<sub>6</sub>): 0.70-0.90 (m, 6H), 0.95-1.80 (m, 12H), 2.15 (s, 3H), 3.85-4.15 (m, 2H), 4.85 (s, 2H), 6.00 (s, 1H), 6.80 (s, 1H), 6.90-7.05 (m, 1H), 7.10-7.45 (m, 5H).

5

10

15

20

25

30

### Method 17

# (R)-N-Benzyloxycarbonyl-α-carboxy-4-hydroxybenzylamine

(R)-p-Hydroxyphenylglycine (5.00 g, 29.9 mmol) was mixed with water (50 ml). Sodium bicarbonate (6.3g, 75.0 mmol) was added to the slurry and a white suspension was the result after 10 min stirring. Benzyl chloroformate (5.1ml, 33.9 mmol) was added from a dropping funnel over 20 min and the mixture was stirred vigorously. After 2h, water (300ml) was added and the suspension was extracted with ether (200ml). The white solid did not dissolve and more water and ether were added. LC/MS indicated that the solid was product. The clear part of the aqueous phase was collected and acidified upon a white precipitate was formed. This was left over the weekend and was then filtered off. The remaining aqueous phase containing undissolved material was acidified as well and was extracted with EtOAc (3x). Also here a precipitate remained between the phases. This was collected with the organic layer. The EtOAc phase was evaporated. Toluene was added 2x to remove water. The two fractions of white solid were added together and recrystallized in DCM (200ml). The cooled mixture was filtered and 4.77g (53 %) of white solid were obtained. NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): 5.00 (1H, d), 5.00 (2H, s), 6.70 (2H, d), 7.05-7.50 (7H, m), 7.90 (1H, d).

# Method 18

(R)-N-Benzyloxycarbonyl- $\alpha$ -{N-[(S)-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)propyl]carbamoyl}-4-hydroxybenzylamine

A solution of (R)-N-benzyloxycarbonyl- $\alpha$ -carboxy-4-hydroxybenzylamine (Method 17; 2.00 g, 6.64 mmol), (2S)-2-amino butanic acid t-butyl ester (1.30 g, 6.64 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (2.0 g, 19.8 mmol) in DCM (30 ml) was stirred at RT for 5 min, after which TBTU (2.60 g, 8.10 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature overnight. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel (DCM: Acetone – 60:40). The product was crystallized from toluene (20 ml) giving 1.85 g of the desired product as a white solid. NMR

(400 MHz): 0.80 (3H, t), 1.45 (9H, s), 1.50-1.80 (2H, m), 4.10-4.20 (1H, m), 5.05 (1H, d(AB)), 5.15 (1H, d(AB)), 6.75 (2H, d), 7.20-7.40 (7H, m).

### Method 19

10

15

20

25

30

# 5 $(R)-\alpha-\{N-[(S)-1-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)propyl]carbamoyl\}-4-hydroxybenzylamine$

A mixture of (R)-N-Benzyloxycarbonyl-α-{N-[(S)-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)propyl] carbamoyl}-4-hydroxybenzylamine (Method 18; 1.80 g, 4.07 mmol) and Pd/C (0.2 g, 5 %) in ethanol (30 ml, 95 %) was stirred under hydrogen gas at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through silica gel (2g) and concentrated. The residue was dissolved in acetone (20 ml) and methanesulphonic acid (0.40 g, 4.16 mmol) was added. No crystallization was obtained and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by preparative HPLC using a gradient of 20-50% MeCN in 0.1M ammonium acetate buffer as eluent. The title compound was obtained in 0.350 g (28 %) as a white solid. NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): 0.75 (3H, t), 1.40 (9H, s), 1.50-1.75 (2H, m), 2.70 (1H, s), 4.00-4.10 (1H, m), 4.30 (1H, s), 6.65 (2H, d), 7.15 (2H, d), 8.15 (1H, d).

### Method 20

 $\frac{1,1-\text{Dioxo}-3,3-\text{dibutyl}-5-\text{phenyl}-7-\text{methylthio}-8-(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-\{N-[(S)-2-(t-\text{butoxy})-1-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t-\text{butoxy})-2,3,4,5-(t$ 

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[N-((S)-1-carboxypropyl) carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 6, 15 mg, 0.021 mmol), tert-butyl O-(tert-butyl)-L-serinate hydrochloride (5.4 mg, 0.021 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (4.6 μl, 0.042 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (1 ml). TBTU (12.5 mg, 0.039 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred for one hour. tert-butyl O-(tert-butyl)-L-serinate hydrochloride (0.8 mg, 0.0031 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred for a couple of minutes. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and co-evaporated a few times with toluene. The product was purified using a pre-packed ISOLUTE column (Silica, 2g) and eluted with a stepwise gradient using DCM:EtOAc 100:0 (10 ml) 95:5 (10 ml) 90:10 (10 ml) 80:20 (10 ml), to give 14 mg of the title compound. M/z 924.7.

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

# Method 21

5

10

20

25

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[2-(S)-2-(methoxycarbonyl)-4-(R)-4-(hydroxy)pyrrolidin-1-ylcarbonyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 54 mg, 0.084 mmol), methyl (4R)-4-hydroxy-L-prolinate hydrochloride (18.4 mg, 0.10 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (13.9 μl, 0.13 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (2 ml). TBTU (32.5 mg, 0.101 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred for three hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The product was purified two times using a pre-packed ISOLUTE column (Silica, 2g) and eluted with a stepwise gradient using DCM:EtOAc 100:0, 95:5, 90:10, 80:20 and 60:40, to give 23 mg of the title compound. M/z 767.0.

### Method 22

15 <u>1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[2-(S)-2-(t-butoxycarbonyl) azetidin-1-ylcarbonyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine</u>

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)-α-carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 50 mg, 0.078 mmol), tert-butyl (2S)-azetidine-2-carboxylate (17.4 mg, 0.111 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (10.3 μl, 0.094 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (2 ml). TBTU (30 mg, 0.094 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred for four hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The product was purified using a pre-packed ISOLUTE column (Silica, 2g) and eluted with a stepwise gradient using DCM:EtOAc 100:0, 95:5, 90:10, 80:20, to give 27.5 mg of the title compound. M/z 777.6 (M-H).

# Method 23

1,1-Dioxo-2-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-bromo-8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

To a solution of 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-bromo-8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (prepared according to WO 98/38182; 0.200 g, 0.404 mmol) in MeCN (5 ml) where added p-methoxybenzyl chloride (0.066 ml, 0.486 mmol), CsI

(0.010 g, 0.038 mmol) and Cs2CO3 (0.263 g, 0.807 mmol) and the mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 4h. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was partitioned between EtOAc and 0.5M HCl (aq). The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over MgSO4 and concentrated. The residue was filtered through silica gel (DCM: EtOAc -9:1) to give the title compound in 0.257 g (~quant) as an off-white solid. NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>): 0.60-0.75 (m, 6H), 0.75-1.20 (m, 8H), 1.25-1.45 (m, 2H), 1.80-2.00 (m, 2H), 3.80 (s, 3H), 3.90 (s, 3H), 4.05-4.30 (m, 2H), 4.45-4.65 (m, 2H), 6.70-7.45 (m, 11H).

#### Method 24

15

20

30

10 <u>1,1-Dioxo-2-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine</u>

NaSMe (0.150 g, 2.03 mmol, 95 %) was added to a solution of 1,1-dioxo-2-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-bromo-8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 23; 0.249 g, 0.404 mmol) in DMF (5 ml). The mixture was stirred at RT for 2h, after which the temperature was raised to 80 °C and more NaSMe (0.090 g, 1.22 mmol) was added. After 20h at 80 °C the mixture was added water (5 ml) and 1M HCl (aq) (ph~4). The solution was extracted three times with Et<sub>2</sub>O and the combined organic layers was washed with brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel (Hex: EtOAc-4: 1), which gave the title compound in 0.188 g (82%) as tan solid. NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>): 0.60-0.75 (m, 6H), 0.75-1.20 (m, 8H), 1.25-1.40 (m, 2H), 1.80-2.00 (m, 2H), 2.20 (s, 3H), 3.80 (s, 3H), 4.20 (brs, 2H), 4.50 (brs, 2H), 6.05 (brs, 1H), 6.75-6.85 (m, 3H), 7.00-7.10 (m, 3H), 7.20-7.35 (m, 4H), 7.50 (s, 1H).

### 25 Method 25

1,1-Dioxo-2-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(*t*-butoxycarbonylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine

A solution of 1,1-dioxo-2-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Method 24; 4.487 g, 7.889 mmol) in MeCN (100ml) was added t-butyl bromide (0.262g, 0.813 mmol), t-butyl bromoacetate (1.46ml, 9.880 mmol) and potassium carbonate (anhydrous, 3.28g, 23.7 mmol) in this order. The mixture was heated to 55°C for 2.5h, after which it was cooled to RT and left stirring over night. The solvent was evaporated until a yellowish slurry remained, which was extracted

between diethyl ether (150ml) and water (100ml). The aqueous phase was washed with ether (100ml) and the combined ether layers were washed with 0.1M KHSO<sub>4</sub> (aq, 100ml), brine (100ml) and were dried The ether was removed under reduced pressure and the beige solid obtained was dried under reduced pressure for 4h (5.355 g, 99 %). NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>): 0.60-1.25 (m, 14H), 1.25-1.40 (m, 2H), 1.50 (s, 9H), 1.75-2.00 (m, 2H), 2.10 (s, 3H), 3.80 (s, 3H), 4.20 (brs, 2H), 4.50 (brs, 2H), 4.60 (s, 2H), 6.45 (s, 1H), 6.75-6.85 (m, 2H), 7.00-7.15 (m, 3H), 7.20-7.40 (m, 5H).

### Method 26

5

15

20

25

30

10 <u>1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[N-((S)-1-{N-[(S)-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)ethyl]carbamoyl}ethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine</u>

1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[*N*-((R)-α-carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (Example 25; 58 mg, 0.091 mmol), *tert*-butyl L-alanyl-L-alaninate hydrochloride (27.5 mg, 0.11 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (20 μl, 0.18 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (2 ml). TBTU (35 mg, 0.18 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred for 2-3 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The product was purified using a pre-packed ISOLUTE column (Silica, 2g) and eluted with a stepwise gradient using DCM:EtOAc 100:0, 95:5, 90:10 and 80:20 to give 34 mg (45%) of the title compound. M/z 838.5.

### Method 27

### tert-Butyl 4-methylleucinate

4-Methylleucine (500mg, 3.44mmol) was suspended in 10 ml t-butyl acetate. Perchloric acid (0.2ml, 3.49mmol) was added and the flask was stopped with a septum and stirred over night. Analysis was performed using TLC (DCM:MeOH, 9:1; staining with a ninhydrine/EtOH solution). The solution was poured into a flask containing 30ml EtOAc and 30 ml 5% Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>. The aq-layer turned acidic and 2M NaOH was added until pH was approximately 7. The phases were separated and the aq-phase was washed with 2x30ml EtOAc. The combined organic phases were washed with brine, dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated. A oil was obtained which was co-evaporated with toluene and then with diethyl

- 86 -

ether before being placed under vacuum for two days. Mass 665 mg (96% yield). NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): 1.0 (s, 9H), 1.5 (s, 9H), 1.65-1.95 (m, 2H), 3.82 (t, 1H).

### Method 28

15

# 5 Methyl 3-(trimethylsilyl)alaninate

3-Trimethylsilyl alanine (J. Organomet. Chem., 628, (2001), 183-194; 19mg, 0.118mmol) was mixed with 3ml BF<sub>3</sub>-MeOH (14%, 3.7mmol) in a sealed tube and heated to 70°C. Analysis was performed using TLC (MeOH:DCM 1:9, stained w. ninhydrine in ethanol). The mixture was heated for 3h and was then cooled to ambient temperature. The mixture was poured into a mixture of 3ml EtOAc and 2ml water containing Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>. More Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (5%-aq) was added until pH ca 7. The aqueous phase was washed with EtOAc (2x3ml). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (1ml), dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated. The product was obtained as a white film. Mass: 19mg (92% yield). NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): 0.1 (s, 9H), 1.2-1.4 (m, 2H), 3.8 (s, 3H), 4.2 (brs, 1H).

# **Claims**

What we claim is:

# 5 1. A compound of formula (I):

wherein:

15

R' is selected from hydrogen or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl;

One of  $\mathbb{R}^1$  and  $\mathbb{R}^2$  are selected from hydrogen,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl and the other is selected from  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl;

 $R^x$  and  $R^y$  are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, amino, mercapto,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy,  $N-(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)amino,  $N,N-(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)2amino,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylS(O)a wherein a is 0 to 2;

M is selected from -N- or -CH-;

R<sup>z</sup> is selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkoxycarbonyl,

, N-( $C_{1-6}$ alkyl)sulphamoyl and N,N-( $C_{1-6}$ alkyl) $_2$ sulphamoyl;

v is 0-5;

one of  $\mathbb{R}^4$  and  $\mathbb{R}^5$  is a group of formula (IA):

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
A & O \\
R_{10}^{11} & R_{9} & R_{8}^{10} & R_{7}^{7}
\end{array}$$

10

15

20

25

2;

(IA)

R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> and the other of R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxycarbonyl, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>3</sub>sulphamoyl and N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl; wherein R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> and the other of R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> may be optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>16</sup>;

X is -O-, -N( $R^a$ )-, -S(O)<sub>b</sub>- or -CH( $R^a$ )-; wherein  $R^a$  is hydrogen or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl and b is 0-

Ring A is aryl or heteroaryl; wherein Ring A is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from  $R^{17}$ ;

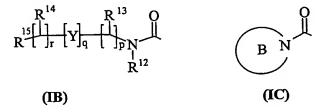
 $R^7$  is hydrogen,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; wherein  $R^7$  is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from  $R^{18}$ ;

R<sup>8</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

R<sup>9</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

 $R^{10}$  is hydrogen,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; wherein  $R^{10}$  is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from  $R^{19}$ ;

R<sup>11</sup> is carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR<sup>c</sup>)(OR<sup>d</sup>), -P(O)(OH)(OR<sup>c</sup>),
-P(O)(OH)(R<sup>d</sup>) or -P(O)(OR<sup>c</sup>)(R<sup>d</sup>) wherein R<sup>c</sup> and R<sup>d</sup> are independently selected from
C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl; or R<sup>11</sup> is a group of formula (IB) or (IC):



wherein:

Y is  $-N(R^n)$ -,  $-N(R^n)C(O)$ -,  $-N(R^n)C(O)(CR^sR^t)_vN(R^n)C(O)$ -, -O-, and -S(O)a-; wherein a is 0-2, v is 1-2,  $R^s$  and  $R^t$  are independently selected from hydrogen or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl optionally substituted by  $R^{26}$  and  $R^n$  is hydrogen or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

R<sup>12</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

R<sup>13</sup> and R<sup>14</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, carbocyclyl or 30 heterocyclyl; and when q is 0, R<sup>14</sup> may additionally be selected from hydroxy; wherein R<sup>13</sup> and R<sup>14</sup> may be independently optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from R<sup>20</sup>;

 $\mathbb{R}^{15}$  is carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, phosphono,  $-P(O)(OR^e)(OR^f)$ ,  $-P(O)(OH)(OR^e)$ ,  $-P(O)(OH)(R^e)$  or  $-P(O)(OR^e)(R^f)$  wherein  $R^e$  and  $R^f$  are independently selected from  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;

p is 1-3; wherein the values of R<sup>13</sup> may be the same or different;

q is 0-1;

5

10

15

20

25

30

r is 0-3; wherein the values of R<sup>14</sup> may be the same or different;

m is 0-2; wherein the values of R<sup>10</sup> may be the same or different;

n is 1-3; wherein the values of R<sup>7</sup> may be the same or different;

Ring B is a nitrogen linked heterocyclyl substituted on carbon by one group selected from  $R^{23}$ , and optionally additionally substituted on carbon by one or more  $R^{24}$ ; and wherein if said nitrogen linked heterocyclyl contains an -NH- moiety, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from  $R^{25}$ ;

R<sup>16</sup>, R<sup>17</sup> and R<sup>18</sup> are independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxycarbonyl, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)sulphamoyl and N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl; wherein R<sup>16</sup>, R<sup>17</sup> and R<sup>18</sup> may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>21</sup>;

R<sup>19</sup>, R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>24</sup> and R<sup>26</sup> are independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoyloxy, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)amino, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>amino, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanoylamino, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>carbamoyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 to 2, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxycarbonyl, N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)sulphamoyl, N,N-(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>2</sub>sulphamoyl, carbocyclyl, heterocyclyl, benzyloxycarbonylamino, (C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>3</sub>silyl, sulpho, sulphino, amidino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR<sup>a</sup>)(OR<sup>b</sup>), -P(O)(OH)(OR<sup>a</sup>), -P(O)(OH)(R<sup>a</sup>) or -P(O)(OR<sup>a</sup>)(R<sup>b</sup>), wherein R<sup>a</sup> and R<sup>b</sup> are independently selected from C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl; wherein R<sup>19</sup>, R<sup>20</sup>, R<sup>24</sup> and R<sup>26</sup> may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>22</sup>;

R<sup>21</sup> and R<sup>22</sup> are independently selected from halo, hydroxy, cyano, carbamoyl, ureido, amino, nitro, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy,

5

10

15

methyl, ethyl, methoxy, ethoxy, vinyl, allyl, ethynyl, methoxycarbonyl, formyl, acetyl, formamido, acetylamino, acetoxy, methylamino, dimethylamino, N-methylcarbamoyl, N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl, methylsulphinyl, mesyl, N-methylsulphamoyl and N,N-dimethylsulphamoyl;

R<sup>23</sup> is carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR<sup>g</sup>)(OR<sup>h</sup>), -P(O)(OH)(OR<sup>g</sup>),
-P(O)(OH)(R<sup>g</sup>) or -P(O)(OR<sup>g</sup>)(R<sup>h</sup>) wherein R<sup>g</sup> and R<sup>h</sup> are independently selected from
C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl;

 ${f R}^{25}$  is selected from C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylsulphonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, N-(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)carbamoyl, benzyl, benzyloxycarbonyl, benzoyl and phenylsulphonyl; or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

- 2. A compound of formula (I) as claimed in claim 1 wherein R<sup>v</sup> is hydrogen or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.
- 3. A compound of formula (I) as claimed in either of claims 1 or 2 wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are both butyl or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.
- 4. A compound of formula (I) as claimed in any one of claims 1-3 wherein R<sup>x</sup> and R<sup>y</sup> are both hydrogen or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.
- 5. A compound of formula (I) as claimed in any one of claims 1-4 wherein M is -N- or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.
  - 6. A compound of formula (I) as claimed in any one of claims 1-5 wherein v is 0 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.
- 30 7. A compound of formula (I) as claimed in any one of claims 1-6 wherein R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are hydrogen or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

WO 03/022286 PCT/GB02/04033

8. A compound of formula (I) as claimed in any one of claims 1-7 wherein R<sup>4</sup> is brome. methyl or methylthio or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

5

A compound of formula (I) as claimed in any one of claims 1-8 wherein R<sup>5</sup> is a group 9. of formula (IA) (as depicted in claim 1) wherein:

```
X is -O-;
```

Ring A is phenyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from R<sup>17</sup>:

10

R<sup>7</sup> is hydrogen;

R<sup>8</sup> is hydrogen;

R<sup>9</sup> is hydrogen;

m is 0;

15

20

R<sup>11</sup> is carboxy, a group of formula (IB) (as depicted above) or a group of formula (IC) (as depicted above) wherein:

R<sup>12</sup> is hydrogen or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

p is 1 or 2;

 $R^{13}$  is hydrogen or  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl optionally substituted by  $R^{20}$  wherein  $R^{20}$  is hydroxy.

carbamoyl, amino, benzyloxycarbonylamino, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylS(O)<sub>a</sub> wherein a is 0 or (C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)<sub>3</sub>silyl;

R<sup>14</sup> is hydrogen or hydroxy or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl; wherein R<sup>14</sup> may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from R<sup>20</sup>:

Y is  $-N(R^n)C(O)$ - wherein  $R^n$  is hydrogen;

q is 0 or 1;

25 r is 0 or 1;

R<sup>15</sup> is carboxy or sulpho:

R<sup>17</sup> is hydroxy; and

R<sup>20</sup> is selected from hydroxy:

Ring B is pyrrolidin-1-yl or azetidinyl substituted on carbon by one group selected from R<sup>23</sup>, and optionally additionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>24</sup>; wherein R<sup>23</sup> is 30 carboxy and R<sup>24</sup> is hydroxy;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

10. A compound of formula (I) (as depicted in claim 1) wherein:

R<sup>v</sup> is hydrogen;

R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are both butyl;

5 R<sup>x</sup> and R<sup>y</sup> are both hydrogen;

M is -N-;

v is 0;

R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are hydrogen;

R4 is bromo, methyl or methylthio; and

R<sup>5</sup> is N-{(R)-α-[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)-α-[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)-α-[N-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)-α-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-hydroxyethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)-α-[N-((S)-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)-α-[N-((S)-1-carboxypropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)-α-[N-((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthio-ethyl)carbamoyl]

- benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthio-ethyl)carbamoyl] benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-carbamoyl-ethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]-4-
- 20 hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-hydroxyethyl) carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl] benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl] benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-methylpropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-3-methylbutyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}
- 30 (carboxymethyl)-N-methylcarbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(1-(R)-2-(R)-1-carboxy-1-hydroxyprop-2-yl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-

 $(sulphomethyl) carbamoyl] benzyl\} carbamoylmethoxy, \textit{N-}((R)-\alpha\text{-}carboxybenzyl)$ 

carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4-$ 

 $hydroxybenzyl \} carbamoylmethoxy, \textit{N-}\{(R)-\alpha-[\textit{N-}((S)-1-carboxy-2-methylpropyl)carbamoyl]-methylpropyl) carbamoyl]-methylpropylycarbamoyl]-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropyll-methylpropylycarbamoyll-methylpropyll-methyll-methylpropyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyll-methyl$ 

4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxybutyl)carbamoyl]-4-$ 

- 5 hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4$ 
  - hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthio-nydroxybenzyl]\}$
  - ethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-
  - carboxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-{(S)-1-[N-
  - ((S)-2-hydroxy-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]propyl}carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-
- 10  $\{(R)-\alpha-[2-(S)-2-(carboxy)-4-(R)-4-(hydroxy)pyrrolidin-1-ylcarbonyl]benzyl\}$ 
  - carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[2-(S)-2-(carboxy)azetidin-1-ylcarbonyl]benzyl}
  - carbamoylmethoxy,  $N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-\{(S)-1-[N-((S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-1-(S)-($

  - carboxy-3,3-dimethylbutyl)carbamoyl] benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy, N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-
- - carboxy-3,3-dimethylbutyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy, N-((R)- $\alpha$ -{N-
  - [(S)-1-carboxy-2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl] carbamoyl}-4-hydroxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy or N-
  - $((R)-\alpha-\{N-[(R)-1-carboxy-2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl]carbamoyl\}-4-$
  - hydroxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy;
- 20 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.
  - 11. A compound of formula (I) selected from:
  - 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8- $(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthio-ethyl)carbamoyl]$ -4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-
- 25 benzothiadiazepine;
  - $1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl\} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-tetrahydr$
  - benzothiadiazepine;
- 30 methylpropyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine;

- 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxybutyl) carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine;
- 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxypropyl) carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxyethyl) carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-
- 10 benzothiadiazepine;

15

- 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine;
- 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8- $(N-\{(R)-\alpha-[N-((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthioethyl)carbamoyl]$  carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine;
- 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-α-[N-{(S)-1-[N-((S)-2-hydroxy-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]propyl}carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; and
  - 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- $\alpha$ -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-methylpropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl}carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine;
- or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.
  - 12. A process for preparing a compound of formula (I) as claimed in claims 1-11 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof which process comprises of:
- 30 Process 1): for compounds of formula (I) wherein X is -O-,-NR<sup>a</sup> or -S-; reacting a compound of formula (IIa) or (IIb):

with a compound of formula (III):

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
A & O \\
R^{11} & & N \\
R^{10} & R^{9} & R^{8} & R^{7}
\end{array}$$
(III)

5

wherein L is a displaceable group;

Process 2): reacting an acid of formula (IVa) or (IVb):

HO 
$$R^7$$
  $R^6$   $R^6$   $R^7$   $R^8$   $R^7$   $R^8$   $R$ 

or an activated derivative thereof; with an amine of formula (V):

15

Process 3): for compounds of formula (I) wherein R<sup>11</sup> is a group of formula (IB); reacting a compound of formula (I) wherein R<sup>11</sup> is carboxy with an amine of formula (VI):

(VI)

5 Process 4) for compounds of formula (I) wherein one of R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R<sup>17</sup>; reacting a compound of formula (VIIa) or (VIIb):

wherein L is a displaceable group; with a thiol of formula (VIII):

Rm-H

**(VIII)** 

wherein  $R^m$  is  $C_{1-6}$ alkylthio optionally substituted on carbon by one or more  $R^{16}$ ; Process 5): for compounds of formula (I) wherein  $R^{11}$  is carboxy; deprotecting a compound of formula (IXa):

(IXa)

or (IXb):

$$R^{p}$$
 $R^{p}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 
 $R^{9}$ 
 $R^{8}$ 
 $R^{7}$ 
 $R^{4}$ 
 $R^{3}$ 
 $R^{2}$ 
 $R^{2}$ 

wherein R<sup>p</sup> together with the -OC(O)- group to which it is attached forms an ester;

5 Process 6): for compounds of formula (I) wherein R<sup>11</sup> is a group of formula (IB) and R<sup>15</sup> is carboxy; deprotecting a compound of formula (Xa):

(Xa)

or (Xb):

10

wherein R<sup>p</sup> together with the -OC(O)- group to which it is attached forms an ester; or Process 7): for compounds of formula (I) wherein R<sup>11</sup> is a group of formula (IB) and N(R<sup>n</sup>)C(O)-; reacting an acid of formula (XIa):

(XIa)

or (XIb):

5

10

HO

$$R^{13}$$
 $R^{13}$ 
 $R^{13}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 

(XIb)

or an activated derivative thereof; with an amine of formula (XII):

$$R^{15} = R^{14} + R^{15} = R^{16}$$

(XII)

and thereafter if necessary or desirable:

- i) converting a compound of the formula (I) into another compound of the formula (I);
- ii) removing any protecting groups;
- iii) forming a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug. 15

- 13. A compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 11 for use as a medicament.
- 5 14. A compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 11 for use in a method of prophylactic or therapeutic treatment of a warm-blooded animal, such as man.
- 15. The use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt,

  10 solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 11 in
  the manufacture of a medicament for use in the production of an IBAT inhibitory effect in a
  warm-blooded animal, such as man.
- 16. The use of a compound of the formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt,

  solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 11, in
  the production of an IBAT inhibitory effect in a warm-blooded animal, such as man.
  - 17. A method for producing an IBAT inhibitory effect in a warm-blooded animal, such as man, in need of such treatment which comprises administering to said animal an effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 11.

20

25

- 18. A pharmaceutical composition which comprises a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 11, in association with a pharmaceutically-acceptable diluent or carrier.
- 19. A pharmaceutical composition which comprises a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 11, and an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, in association with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier.

20. A pharmaceutical composition which comprises a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 11, and a bile acid binder, in association with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier.

5

10

15

25

30

- 21. A pharmaceutical composition which comprises a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 11, and an HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, and a bile acid binder in association with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier.
- 22. A composition according to claim 19 or claim 21 wherein the HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor is atorvastatin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.
- 23. A composition according to claim 19 or claim 21 wherein the HMG Co-A reductase inhibitor is rosuvastatin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
- 24. A pharmaceutical composition which comprises a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof, as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 11 and a PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonist, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in association with a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier.
  - 25. A composition according to claim 24 wherein the PPAR alpha and/or gamma agonist is (S)-2-ethoxy-3-[4-(2-{4-methanesulphonyloxyphenyl}ethoxy)phenyl]propanoic acid or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

national Application No PCT/GB 02/04033

A CLACCI	FIGATION OF CUR IFOT MATTER						
IPC 7	FICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER A61K31/554 C07D285/36 A61P3/06 C07K5/087 A61K38/05 A61K38/0		C07K5/065				
According to	International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classific	ation and IPC					
<del></del>	SEARCHED						
	ocumentation searched (classification system followed by classification A61K C07D C07K	on symbols)					
	lion searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that s						
	ata base consulted during the international search (name of data ba	se and, where practical, search to	erms used)				
EPO-Internal, WPI Data, CHEM ABS Data							
C. DOCUM	ENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT						
Category °	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the rel	evani passages	Relevant to claim No.				
A	WO 00 47568 A (GD SEARLE & CO (US))  17 August 2000 (2000-08-17)  cited in the application the whole document						
A	WO 98 38182 A (GLAXO GROUP LTD (6 3 September 1998 (1998-09-03) cited in the application the whole document	1-25					
P,A	WO 01 66533 A (ASTRAZENEKA UK LTI 13 September 2001 (2001-09-13) the whole document	1–25					
P,A	WO 02 50051 A (ASTRAZENECA UK LTI 27 June 2002 (2002-06-27) the whole document 	1–25					
Furt	her documents are listed in the continuation of box C.	X Patent family members	are listed in annex.				
° Special ca	itegories of cited documents:	"T" later document published after	er the International filing date				
E° earlier	"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance  "E" earlier document but published on or after the international "Y" document but published on or after the international "Y" document but published on or after the international "Y" document but published on or after the international "Y" document but published after the international "Y" document but published after the international "I" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but died to understand the principle or theory underlying the working the priority and after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but died to understand the principle or theory underlying the working the priority date and not in conflict with the application but died to understand the principle or theory underlying the working the priority date and not in conflict with the application but died to understand the principle or theory underlying the working the priority date and not in conflict with the application but died to understand the principle or theory underlying the working the priority date and not in conflict with the application but died to understand the principle or theory underlying the working the priority date and not in conflict with the application but died to understand the principle or theory underlying the working the priority date and not in conflict with the application but died to understand the principle or theory underlying the working the principle or the priority date and not in conflict with the application but died to understand the principle or the priority date and not in conflict with the application but died to understand the principle or the priority date and not in conflict with the application but died to understand the principle or the priority date and not in conflict with the application but died to understand the priority date and not include the priority date and no						
"L" docume	filing date  "Le document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another etigling as the graphic resolution to the considered inventor and the considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention						
Of document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means of document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.							
	han the priority date claimed	"&" document member of the sat					
	actual completion of the International search 4 October 2002	Date of mailing of the internal 05/11/2002	апола веаси героп				
Name and	mailing address of the ISA European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentiaan 2	Authorized officer					
	NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016	Cortés, J					

International application No. PCT/GB 02/04033

# **INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**

Box I	Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)						
This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain dalms under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:							
1. χ	Claims Nos.:						
2. X	Claims Nos.: 1-25 (part) because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:  see FURTHER INFORMATION sheet PCT/ISA/210						
3.	Claims Nos.: because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).						
Box II	Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)						
This Inte	ernational Searching Authority found multiple Inventions in this international application, as follows:						
1.	As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international Search Report covers all searchable claims.						
2.	As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.						
3.	As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:						
4.	No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:						
Remark	on Protest  The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.  No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.						

# FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

Continuation of Box I.1

Although claims 16 and 17 are directed to a method of treatment of the human or animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compounds.

Continuation of Box I.1

Rule 39.1(iv) PCT - Method for treatment of the human or animal body by therapy

Continuation of Box I.2

Claims Nos.: 1-25 (part)

The scope of the compound group defined by the functional term "prodrugs" is unclear within the meaning of Article 6 PCT, as it is not possible to assign a molecular structure to this group.

For this reason it was not possible to carry out a complete search over the whole claimed scope. Those parts of the application referring to "prodrugs" have therefore not been searched.

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that claims, or parts of claims, relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of an international preliminary examination (Rule 66.1(e) PCT). The applicant is advised that the EPO policy when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority is normally not to carry out a preliminary examination on matter which has not been searched. This is the case irrespective of whether or not the claims are amended following receipt of the search report or during any Chapter II procedure.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

national Application No PCT/GB 02/04033

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date		Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 0047568	A	17-08-2000	AU CN EP HU WO	3694600 A 1346351 T 1155007 A2 0105409 A2 0047568 A2	29-08-2000 24-04-2002 21-11-2001 29-05-2002 17-08-2000
WO 9838182	Α	03-09-1998	AU WO	6823898 A 9838182 A1	18-09-1998 03-09-1998
WO 0166533	Α	13-09-2001	AU WO	3755601 A 0166533 A1	17-09-2001 13-09-2001
WO 0250051	A	27-06-2002	AU WO	2222802 A 0250051 A1	01-07-2002 27-06-2002